

# SAP Basics

## 1. What is 'SAP'?

'SAP' is an acronym for 'Systeme, Anwendungen, Produkte der Dataenverarbeitung,' in German, meaning '**Systems, Applications, and Products in Data Processing.**' Founded in 1972, SAP—with its headquarters in Walldorf, Germany—is the global market leader in collaborative, inter-enterprise business solutions (i.e., business software). SAP employs close to 40,000 employees worldwide, with more than 100,000 installations in about 40,000 companies in 120 countries. More than 12 million people use SAP on a daily basis. There are more than 20 industry-specific 'Industry Solutions,' known commonly as 'IS' (IS-Oil, IS-Retail, IS-Bank, etc.).

## 2. Tell Me More about (The History of) SAP.

- SAP was founded by five former IBM employees, in **1972**, to develop a standard business application software, with the goal of processing business information in real-time. The company, SAP GmbH, was started in Mannheim, Germany.
- During **1973**, the company released its first financial accounting software, '**R1**' (the letter 'R' stands for 'Real-Time Processing').
- In the late 1970s, SAP '**R/2**' was released with IBM's database and a dialogue-oriented business application.
- R/2 was further stabilized during the early 1980s and the company came out with a version capable of processing business transactions in several languages and currencies to meet the needs of its international clientele.
- SAP GmbH became **SAP AG** in 1988. Later on, the company established subsidiaries in countries such as the United States, Sweden, Denmark, and Italy.

- The 1990s saw the introduction of SAP '**R/3**,' with client-server architecture and GUI, which ran on almost any database, and on most operating systems. SAP R/3 heralded a new era in enterprise computing, moving from a 'main frame' to a 3-tier architecture (Database->Application->User interface), which became the new industry standard.
- By **1996**, the company had more than 9,000 installations worldwide. By the end of the 1990s, SAP had introduced the e-commerce enabled **my SAP** suite of products for leveraging ever-expanding web technology.
- SAP began the twenty-first century with the **Enterprise Portal** and role-based access to business information.
- SAP continues to evolve and innovate, bringing cutting-edge technologies to business-information processing. SAP has already introduced SAP **Net Weaver**, which is based on Enterprise Services Architecture (ESS) with application integration across diverse platforms for providing one-stop end-to-end business processing. With Net Weaver, companies can now integrate people, information, and processes.

### **3. What are the 'Solutions' Currently Available from SAP?**

Currently, **SAP Solutions** include the following:

- SAP ERP
- SAP
- SAP Business Suite
- SAP R/3 and R/3 Enterprise
- SAP for Industries
- SAP xApps
- SAP Solution Manager

#### **4. What are the Components of the 'SAP ERP' Solution?**

- SAP ERP Central Component (ECC 6.0)
- SAP SEM (Strategic Enterprise Management) (SEM 6.0)
- SAP cProject Suite (Project and Portfolio Management 4.0)
- SAP SRM for ERP (SRM 5.0)
- SAP Catalog Content Management (CCM 2.0 for ERP 2004)
- SAP Internet Sales for ERP

#### **5. What is the Significance of the 'SAP NetWeaver' Platform?**

The SAP '**NetWeaver**' platform allows organizations to build new business solutions rapidly while realizing more business value from existing IT investments. SAP NetWeaver supports new cross-functional business processes and helps to lower the **Total Cost of Ownership (TCO)** by reducing the need for custom integration. It offers complete life cycle management for all of your applications. It is also the foundation for **Enterprise Services Architecture (EAS)** and helps align people, information, and business processes across organizational and technological boundaries.

#### **6. What are the Components of 'NetWeaver'?**

By providing an open integration and application platform and permitting the integration of the Enterprise Services Architecture, **SAP NetWeaver** helps unify business processes across technological boundaries, integrating applications for employees as needed, and accessing/editing simple information easily in a structured manner.

Components include:

- **Security**

- **People Integration**
  - Multi-channel Access
  - Portal
  - Collaboration
- **Information Integration**
  - Business Intelligence
- **BI (Business Intelligence) Content**
  - Knowledge Management
  - Master Data Management
- **Process Integration**
  - Integration Broker
  - Business Process Management
- **Application Platform**
  - Java
  - ABAP
  - Business Services
  - Connectivity
  - DB and OS Abstraction
  - SAP Knowledge Warehouse
- **Life Cycle Management**
  - Customizing
  - Software Change Management
  - System Management

## **7. What are the Components of the 'SAP Business Suite'?**

- SAP Customer Relationship Management (CRM 5.0)
- SAP Supply Chain Management (SCM 5.0)
- SAP Supplier Relationship Management (SRM)
  - SAP SRM 2007
  - SAP Catalog Content Management (SRM-MDM 1.0)
- SAP Product Life Cycle Management
  - SAP Product Life Cycle Management 4.00
  - SAP Environment, Health, and Safety 2.7B
  - SAP PLM Recipe Management 2.1
  - Audit Management
- SAP Compliance Management for SOA
  - Management of Internal controls 1.0
- SAP Learning Solution 2.00
- SAP Strategic Enterprise Management (SEM)

## **8. What are the Most Recent Releases of the 'SAP R/3' Solution?**

- SAP R/3 Enterprise Release 4.70
- SAP R/3 Release 4.6C/4.6B/4.5B/4.0B

## **9. What 'Industry Solutions' (IS) are Available from SAP?**

There are 22 Industry Solutions available from SAP. They are:

- SAP for Aerospace and Defense
- SAP for Automotive

- SAP for Banking
- SAP for Consumer Products
- SAP Contract Accounts Receivable and Payable
- SAP for Defense and Security
- SAP for Engineering, Construction and Operations
- SAP for Financial Service Providers
- SAP for Healthcare
- SAP for Higher Education and Research
- SAP for High Tech
- SAP for Insurance
- SAP for Media
- SAP for Mill Products
- SAP for Mining
- SAP for Oil and Gas
- SAP for Professional Services
- SAP for Public Sectors
- SAP for Retail
- SAP for Telecommunications
- SAP for Utilities
- SAP for Wholesale Distribution

## **10. What is ‘SAP xApps’?**

The ‘SAP xApps’ family of composite applications enables continuous business innovation—and provides the flexibility necessary to respond quickly and profitably to business changes. They extend the value of core business investments and

maximize the return on strategic assets: employees, knowledge, products, business relationships, and IT.

SAP and SAP certified partners deliver these composite applications that drive specialized business processes, provide comprehensive business insights, and focus on the needs of a variety of industries.

All these applications combine Web services and data from multiple systems in an application design made possible by the SAP Composite Application Framework within the SAP NetWeaver technology platform. This framework includes the methodology, tools, and run-time environment to develop composite applications. It provides a consistent object model and a rich user experience, and gives developers a productive way to create composite applications on top of a set of heterogeneous applications.

## **11. What are all the Components of ‘SAP xApps’?**

- Duet
- SAP Document Builder
- SAP Global Trade Services
- SAP xApp Manufacturing Integration and Intelligence
- SAP xApp Resource and Portfolio Management
- SAP xApp Product Definition
- SAP xApp Cost and Quotation Management
- SAP xApp Integrated Exploration and Production
- SAP xApp Sales and Operations Planning

## **12. What is known as ‘Duet’?**

A component under SAP xApps, ‘**Duet**’ is a first-of-its-kind software solution from SAP and Microsoft that enables users to easily and quickly interact with SAP

business processes and data via their familiar Microsoft Office environment. The result of a groundbreaking collaboration between SAP and Microsoft, it is the first joint product created by these two industry leaders and is designed to revolutionize how IT workers interact with enterprise applications.

**Duet** enables:

- **Budget Monitoring:** Schedule time-critical alerts and notifications to monitor cost centers or internal orders, which are delivered directly to Microsoft Outlook.
- **Demand Planning:** Create and use planning sheets, as well as analyze and manage demand planning data from the SAP System using Microsoft Excel.
- **Duet Reporting:** Schedule reports to be delivered regularly to Microsoft Outlook, receive individual reports on an as-needed basis, and view reports in Microsoft Excel.
- **Leave Management:** Add leave requests as Microsoft Outlook calendar items that integrate approval guidelines in the SAP System and enterprise-defined processes.
- **Sales Management:** Manage CRM accounts and contacts, create business activities, and access sales analytics information using Microsoft Outlook.
- **Team Management:** Access up-to-date information about yourself and employees, open positions, and organizational structures that are integrated from the SAP System into the Microsoft Outlook contacts area.
- **Time Management:** Record time in the Microsoft Outlook calendar, streamlining time entry while ensuring time-reporting compliance in the SAP System.
- **Travel Management:** Create a travel request and a travel expense report in the SAP System using Microsoft Outlook.



### **13. Explain the ‘SAP Document Builder.’**

‘SAP Document Builder’ (CA-GTF-DOB) is a content-driven and cross-application solution for building and authoring complex documents. As a generic tool, it can be deployed within international organizations and large corporations to generate contract and bid invitation documents, banking-related documents, auto insurance policies, real estate contracts, and corporate employment policies.

You can deploy SAP Document Builder as a standalone application or integrate it with other SAP or non-SAP components. For example, you can generate business documents required in a procurement system and store them in an electronic data storage system.

The **SAP Document Builder** supports you by:

- Automating and streamlining the document-creation process.
- Enforcing best practices.
- Building documents that reflect company-specific styles and formats from one or more regulation sets.
- Determining inclusion or exclusion of clauses based on legal regulations by means of rules.

### **14. Explain the ‘SAP Solution Manager.’**

Providing central access to Tools, Methods, and Pre-Configured Content, the **SAP Solution Manager** provides support throughout the life cycle of solutions—from Business Blueprint to Configuration to Support.

The features include:

- **Implementation/Upgrade of SAP Solutions**
  - Central access to Project Tools (Project Administration, Business Blueprint, Configuration, Test Workbench, Group Rollout Templates)

- Central management of Project Information (Roadmap, System Landscape, Documentation, etc.)
- Enables comparing/synchronizing customizing in several SAP components
- **Solution Monitoring**
  - Central System Administration
  - System Landscape Analysis with System Level Reporting
  - Real-time System Monitoring
  - Business Process Monitoring
- **Services and Support**
  - Access to programs/services for monitoring and optimizing system performance and availability to minimize risks.
- **Service Desk**
  - Solution Support through Work Flow to create and manage Process/Problem Messages.
- **Change Management**
  - Trace and audit system changes and transports through Change Request Management.

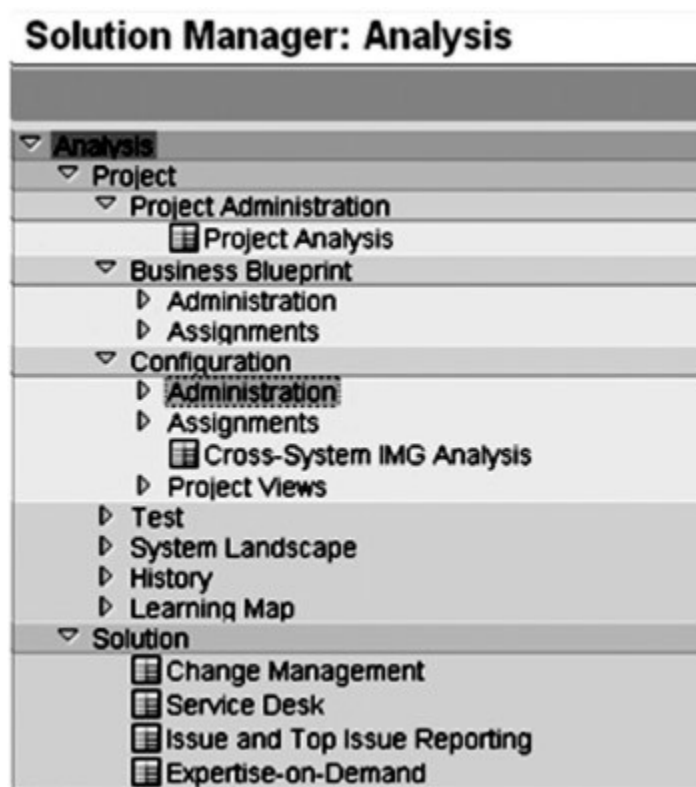


Figure 1: SAP Solution Manager

## 15. Explain how 'mySAP ERP Financial' is Better/Different than 'R/3 Financial Accounting.'

'mySAP ERP Financials' is built on the NetWeaver platform, which is the foundation for service-oriented business solutions, for deploying financial processes at a faster pace. Irrespective of the business type, mySAP ERP Financials is designed to support financial accounting requirements to provide a single complete platform to achieve excellence in accounting, performance management, financial supply chain, and corporate governance. The features include:

- **Industry-Specific Financial Management**

My SAP ERP Financials provides a comprehensive and robust analytical framework to consolidate and/or dissect business information generated in industry solutions or core enterprise processes: all managers in all operations have an improved visibility with a single integrated solution.

- **Performance Management**

My SAP ERP Financials provides a single solution for the entire life cycle of Corporate Performance Management by delivering real-time, personalized measurements and metrics to improve business insight and productivity of non-technical users. Executives, managers, and business workers will now have access to information such as business statistics and **Key Performance Indicators (KPI)** presented in the context of business tasks for better insight and faster decision making. mySAP ERP Financials encompasses:

- Consolidated financial and statutory reporting
- Planning, budgeting, and forecasting
- Strategy management and scorecards
- Risk management
- Financial analytics

- **Financial and Management Accounting**

My SAP ERP Financials helps companies comply with global accounting standards (such as the United States' **Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP)** and the **International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS)**). With the '**New FI-GL**' functionality (Refer to Q.181 for more details) you will now have the ability to generate financial statements of any dimension of the business (unit, profit center, geographical location, etc.). This offers greater flexibility to extend a chart of accounts and allows an easier method of reporting by individual management units and segments. This feature helps companies reduce the complexity and costs associated with parallel accounting or managing a set of books by region, industry, or regulatory reporting statute.

- **Corporate Governance**

With a set of applications and tools, my SAP ERP Financials assists in meeting the specific requirements of today's financial regulations such as the **SarbanesOxley Act**. You now have an intuitive mechanism to collect, document, assess, remediate, and attest to internal control processes and safeguards to ensure transparent business activity. By configuring controls and defining rules and tolerances for your business, you can easily customize internal processes for security, reporting, and error prevention. In addition, you can now document all your internal control processes and make them visible to corporate executives, auditors, and regulators.

- **Financial Supply Chain Management**

Provides the tools to help you manage your financial supply chain and cash-flow cycle more effectively, through end-to-end process support of:

- Credit Management
- Electronic Bill Presentment and Payment
- Collections Management
- Dispute Management
- In-house Cash Management
- Cash and Liquidity Management
- Bank Relationship
- Treasury and Risk Management Processes

## **16. What is an 'SAP Solution Map'?**

My SAP ERP, besides supporting your most important business processes, also provides tools to help you understand how these processes work. One such tool is the **'SAP Solution Map,'** a multi-level blueprint of processes, which helps you visualize,

plan, and implement a coherent, integrated, and comprehensive IT solution. SAP Solution Maps also show how various processes are covered, including the processes that SAP and its partners support. With solution maps, you quickly understand business solutions and the business value they can bring.

## **17. What is ‘SAP Business One’?**

‘SAP Business One’ is the low-cost, easy-to-implement business management solution from SAP for Small and Medium Enterprises (SME). Unlike regular ERP software from SAP, this solution gives managers on-demand access to critical real-time information through ‘one single system’ containing financial, customer relationship management, manufacturing, and management control capabilities. As a result, the solution enables rapid employee productivity, while empowering managers to make better business decisions to stay ahead of the competition. Equipped with a user-friendly interface, SAP Business One serves as your central ERP hub with standard interfaces to internal and external data sources, handheld computers, CRM applications, and other leading analysis tools.

SAP Business One is based on the Microsoft Windows platform making it easier to comprehend and use. The application comes with a ‘demo company,’ which can be used by the implementing company to become familiar with functionalities.

The modules of SAP Business One include:

- Administration
- Financials
- Sales Opportunities
- Sales—A/R
- Purchasing—A/P
- Business Partners
- Banking

- Inventory
- Production
- MRP
- Service
- Human Resources
- Reporting

## **ABAP and Basis**

### **18. What is 'Basis'?**

'**Basis**' is a collection of R/3 programs, which provide the run-time environment for ABAP/4. Imagine Basis as something that is 'sitting' in between the ABAP/4 program code and the computer's operating system. Basis reads ABAP/4 program code and interprets the same into operating system instructions; without Basis you cannot execute any of your ABAP/4 programs.

SAP provides a plethora of tools to administer Basis, which ultimately helps to monitor system configuration, system performance, and system maintenance. The Basis administrator is usually called the 'Basis Consultant.'

### **19. Explain the SAP R/3 'System Architecture.'**

SAP R/3 is based on a 3-tier **Client-Server** model, represented by the:

- Database Layer
- Application Layer
- Presentation Layer

In a 3-tier Client server model, all the above three layers run on three different machines.

The **Database Layer** consists of an RDBMS (Relational Database Management System), which accepts the database requests from the Application Layer, and sends the data back to the Application Layer, which in turn passes it on to the Presentation Layer.

The **Application Layer** or the server interprets the ABAP/4 programs, receiving the inputs from them and providing the processed output to them.



The **Presentation Server** or ‘Presentation Layer’ is what is installed on the typical workstation of a user. This is nothing but the SAPGUI, which when started provides the user with the interface of SAP R/3 menus. This interface accepts the inputs from the user, passes them on to the Application Server, processes the inputs and sends back the output. If database processing is required, the Application Server sends the details to the Database Layer, receives the data, and then processes it at the Application Layer level and sends back the output to the Presentation Layer where the SAPGUI may format the data before displaying it on the screen.

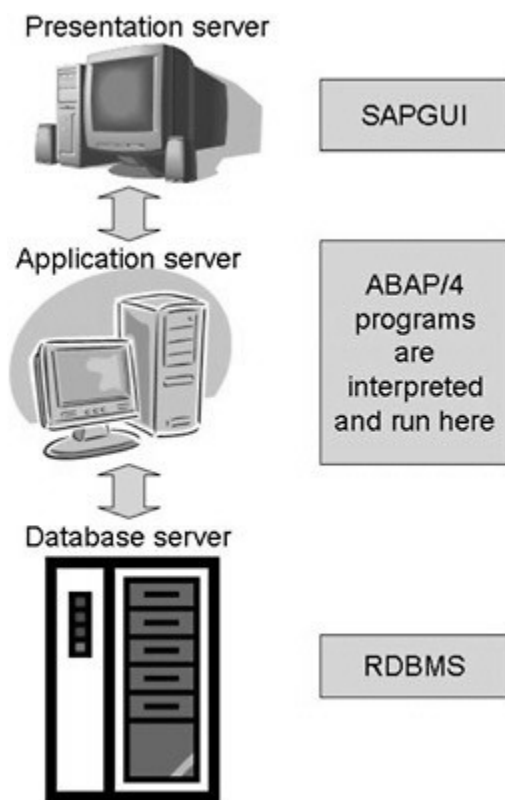


Figure 2: SAP R/3 System Architecture

## 20. What is an ‘Instance’?

An ‘**Instance**’ is an administrative unit that groups together components of an SAP R/3 system or simply an Application Server, which has its own set of work processes. A Client can contain many instances. Loosely defined, an instance refers to a server.

Sometimes the database is also referred to as an ‘instance.’ In this case it is called the ‘**Central Instance.**’

## 21. What do you Mean by the ‘SAP R/3 System Landscape’?

The ‘**System Landscape,**’ in SAP, refers to a number of systems and their deployment within an SAP installation. The various systems may be designated as Development, Test, and Production Clients.

## 22. What is an ‘R/3 Data Dictionary’?

The ‘**Data Dictionary**’ is a collection of logical structures of various objects (Tables, Views, or Structures) used in application development in SAP, which shows how they are mapped to the underlying RDBMS in Tables/Views.

## 23. What is an ‘SAP Business Object’?

An ‘**SAP Business Object**’ is similar to real-world business objects such as Sales Order, Invoice, Employee, etc., which consist of various tables/programs that are related to each other in a business context. All the business objects are maintained in the ‘**BOR (Business Object Repository).**’

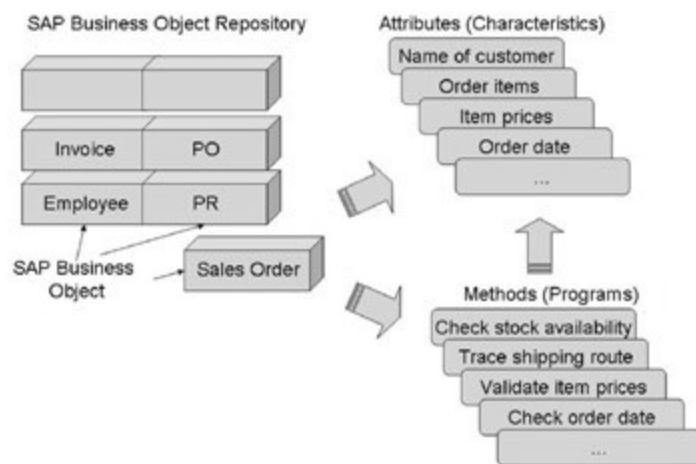


Figure 3: SAP Business Object

The various characteristics of an object are called ‘**Attributes.**’ For example, the business object Sales Order is characterized by the following attributes:

- Date of the order
- Items of the order
- Prices of various items of the order
- Name of the customer to whom the order belongs to

The application program or programs used by the system to change or manipulate a business object are known as Method(s). For example, a program could be used to (a) check the availability of stock to deliver, (b) trace the shipment route, (c) check the item prices, (d) validate the order date, etc.

So, attributes and methods collectively represent business objects in SAP.

## **24. Explain ‘Client-Dependent’ and ‘Client-Independent’ Tables.**

There are certain tables, in SAP, which when changed will not affect similar tables in other Clients. These are known as ‘Client-Dependent’ tables. All Client-dependent tables have Mandt as their first field.

On the other hand, if a change made in one Client is reflected in another table across various Clients, then such a table is called ‘Client-Independent.’ In this case, the first field of the table will not be ‘Mandt.’ You need to be extra careful when changing the settings or content of these tables as this will affect all the Clients.

## **25. What are the Different ‘Types’ of ‘ABAP/4 Programs’?**

There are nine types of ABAP/4 programs in SAP:

- **1** Executable Programs (ABAP Reports)
- **I** INCLUDE Program
- **M** Module Pool/Dialogue programs
- **S** Sub-Routine Pool
- **J** Interface Pool

- **K** Class Pool
- **T** Type Pool
- **F** Function Group
- **X** XSLT Program

## 26. What are 'Internal Tables'?

'**Internal Tables**' are standard data type objects which exist only during the Runtime of an ABAP/4 program. They are used to perform table calculations on subsets of database tables and for re-organizing the contents of database tables according to a user's need. Internal tables fulfil the need for arrays in ABAP/4.

There are three types of internal tables:

- **Standard Tables** with a 'linear' index. The key is always 'non-unique.'
- **Sorted Tables** with either a 'unique' or 'non-unique' key.
- **Hashed Tables** (they do not have a linear index) with the key defined always as 'unique.'

## 27. What is a 'Logical Database'?

A '**Logical Database**' is a special data-retrieval program delivered by SAP, with its own dynamic Selection Screens. You need to code only the processing logic (GET, CHECK, etc., statements). The logical database consists of a 'read' program in which the structure of the local database is reproduced with a selection screen.

Advantages:

- Check functions to validate that user input is complete and correct.
- Meaningful data selection.
- Central authorization checks for database accesses.
- Excellent read access performance while retaining the hierarchical data view determined by the application logic.

## **28. What are the Two Methods for Modifying SAP 'Standard Tables'?**

You can modify SAP 'Standard Tables' using:

- Append Structures
- Customizing INCLUDES

## **29. What is 'BDC' Programming in SAP?**

'**BDC (Batch Data Conversion)**' is an automated procedure for transferring large volumes of external or legacy data into the SAP system using batch input programming. There are three ways to do this:

- Call Transaction Method
- Session Method
- Direct Input Method

Irrespective of the method, the techniques use the following steps:

- Identify the screens of the transaction that the program will process.
- Write a program to build the BDC table that will be used to submit the data (i.e., text file) to SAP.
- Submit the BDC table to the system in the 'batch mode' or as a 'single transaction' by the CALL TRANSACTION command.

The 'Call Transaction' method cannot be used when you want to process multiple transactions. Instead, use the 'BDC-insert function' to achieve this.

## **30. What is the 'BAPI'?**

The '**BAPI (Business Application Programming Interface)**' is SAP's standardized application interface for integrating third party applications with SAP's business processes and data thereby providing an entry into the R/3 system. A BAPI may be

used to create a 'business object' or to change the attributes of a business object. Note that the assignment of a BAPI to a business object is always 1-to-1.

A BAPI Explorer helps you to move around the collection of BAPIs in the system, which is grouped both hierarchically and alphabetically. For each BAPI in the explorer, you are provided with several tabs for details, documentation, tools, and projects (to create new BAPIs).

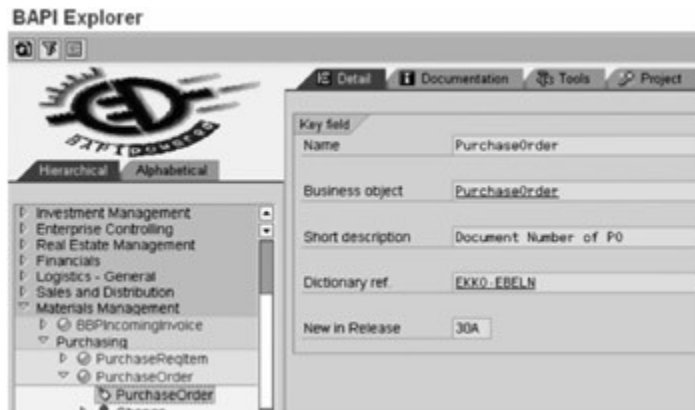


Figure 4: BAPI Explorer

A BAPI can:

- Create a Purchase Order
- Change a Purchase Requisition
- Create a Customer
- Display an Invoice



### 31. What is 'ALE'?

'ALE (Application Link Enabling)' is used to support the construction and operation of distributed applications, through the exchange of data messages ensuring

data consistency across loosely coupled SAP applications, using both ‘synchronous’ and ‘asynchronous’ communications without the need for a central database.

ALE is comprised of three layers:

- Application services
- Distribution services
- Communication services

ALE helps to:

- Distribute applications across several SAP systems, such that centralized/decentralized functions can operate in the same company area.
- Maintain and distribute master data elements from a central system.
- Maintain and distribute control data objects from a central system with the synchronized configuration data (important to decentralize functions yet keep them integrated).
- Link R/2 and R/3 systems.
- Link SAP and external systems, via **IDocs** (Intermediate Documents).

### **32. Is ‘SAP XI’ Intended to Replace ‘ALE’?**

Most ALE solutions are custom built with very little re-usability and scalability. The introduction of **SAP XI** along with the NetWeaver technology replaces ALE with out-of-box functionality available in SAP XI.

### **33. What is an ‘RFC’?**

A ‘**Remote Function Call (RFC)**’ is a call to a ‘function module’ running in a system different from the ‘calling-system.’ The remote function can also be called from within the same system (as a ‘remote call’), but usually the ‘calling-system’ and the ‘called-system’ will be in different systems.

An RFC helps to take care of the following communication:

- Communications between two independent SAP systems.
- Client-server communications between an external Client and an SAP system acting as the server.
- Client-server communications between an SAP System acting as the Client and an external server.

### **34. What is 'OLE'?**

For the Windows front-end, SAP provides interfaces based on Microsoft's '**Object Linking and Embedding**' Technology (**OLE Automation**) for embedding objects such as Microsoft Excel files.

### **35. What is a 'Match Code' in SAP?**

'**Match Codes**' (now known as **Search Help** with release 4.6) help to search and retrieve data when the key of a record is not known. The technique involves (a) creating a '**Match Code Object**' (now known as a '**Search Help Object**') and (b) specifying a '**Match Code ID.**' The system helps you to access the match codes (search help) in the following ways:

- Keeping the cursor in the field, and then pressing '**F4.**'
- Keeping the cursor in the field, clicking the 'right' button on the mouse, and then selecting 'possible entries.'
- Keeping the cursor in the field, and then clicking on the 'magnifying glass.'

### **36. What is a 'Drill-down' Report?**

A '**Drill-Down Report,**' also called an **Interactive Report,** is a report with more detail. Imagine that you are looking at a Balance Sheet, presented as a 'drill-down' report.

The topmost list, also known as the '**Basic List,**' contains the top-level information such as current assets, fixed assets, etc., under the grouping 'assets' on one side of the



Balance Sheet. The ‘drill-down’ functionality helps you select a line item from the Basic List (e.g., fixed assets) and ‘drill-down’ further to a detailed list (**‘secondary list’**) which displays various components of the fixed assets such as land, buildings, machinery, etc. You may ‘drill-down’ even further by doubleclicking the ‘building’ line, which will bring up the next detailed list and so on.

You will be able to create a ‘drill-down’ report with a maximum ‘drill’ level of 20; that is, including the Basic List you will have a total of 21 levels in a single ‘drill-down’ report.

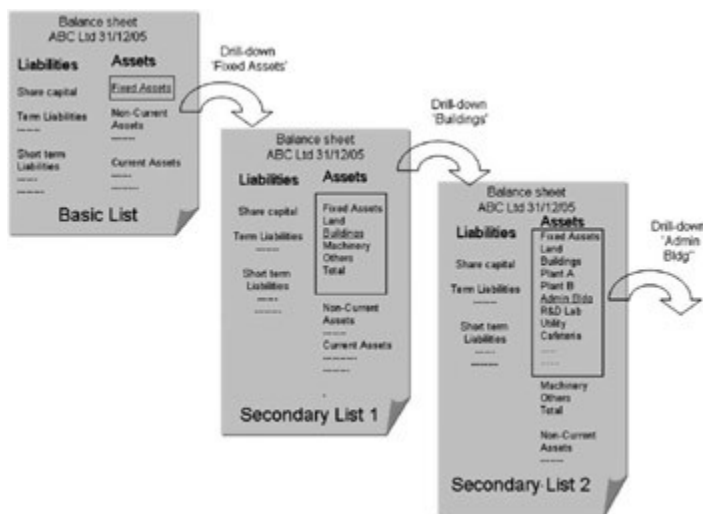


Figure 5: Drill-down report

## 37. What is ‘ALV’ Programming in ABAP?

SAP provides a set of ‘**ABAP List viewer (ALV)**’ function modules, which can be used to enhance the readability and functionality of any report output. This is particularly useful in a situation where the output of a report contains columns extending 255 characters in length. In such cases, this set of ALV functions can help the user to choose and arrange columns from a report output and also save different variants for report display. This is very efficient for dynamically sorting and arranging the columns and provides a wide array of display options.

## 38. What is 'DynPro'?

'DynPro' in SAP refers to Dynamic Programming relating to the screens and 'flow logic,' which controls the processing and display of these screens. On a broader scale, a screen is also referred to as a 'DynPro.'

## 39. What is an 'ABAP/4 Query'?

'ABAP/4 Query' (also known as an SAP Query or Query) is a powerful tool used to generate simple reports without any coding. Typically, an ABAP/4 query is created first by defining a **User Group** and a **Functional Group**. The functional group can either be created with reference to a 'logical' table or a database table. Once the functional group is defined, the user group is assigned to the functional group. The last step is to create the query on the functional group that is generated.

An ABAP/4 Query can be used to create the following three types of reports:

- **Basic Lists:** Reports with basic formatting without any calculated fields.
- **Statistics:** Reports with statistical functions such as average, percentages, etc.
- **Ranked Lists:** Ranked lists are used for analytical purposes.

## 40. What are the Components of 'SAPscript'?

'SAPscript' is the SAP System's own text-processing system. SAPscript is tightly integrated and used for many text-processing tasks. SAP Standard Styles and Layout Sets are always held in Client 000.

Layout Sets are used for the Page Layout of SAPscript documents. A 'layout set' has the following elements:

- **Header Data:** Data related to development (created by, development class, etc.) and the layout set information (which elements are used) are both stored in the header data. A start page must be entered here.

- **Paragraph Formats:** Paragraph formats are required in layout sets. However, they are also used for word processing in layout sets, for example, to format text elements.
- **Character Formats:** You can also use character formats to format texts or paragraphs. Unlike paragraph formats, however, they are used to format text within a paragraph.
- **Windows:** Windows are names and window types, which are not physically positioned until they are allocated to pages and units of measurement are specified.
- **Pages:** Pages are defined to provide the system with a start and end point in text formatting.
- **Page Windows:** Page windows are the combination of windows and pages, where the dimensions of a window and its position on a page are specified.

## 41. Why Do We Need ‘Enhancements’?

The standard R/3 application may not offer some of the functionality you need for a particular customer or for a particular situation. The R/3 **‘Enhancement’** functionality allows you to add your own functionality to SAP’s standard business applications or modify the standard one to suit the particular need.

The enhancement may be done through:

- **Customer exits**

Customers’ potential requirements, which do not form a part of the standard software, are incorporated in the standard R/3 as empty modification ‘shells.’ Customers can then fill these with their own coding. SAP guarantees that all such exists will remain valid across all future releases. The customer exits include:

- Menu Exits

- Screen Exits
- Function Module Exits
- Keyword Exits
- **ABAP/4 Dictionary Elements**

These are ABAP/4 Dictionary Enhancements (creation of table appends), Text Enhancements (customer-specific keywords and documentation for data elements), and Field Exits (creation of additional coding for data elements).

## 42. Differentiate ‘Screen Painter’ from ‘Menu Painter.’

‘Screen Painter’ is an ABAP Workbench tool used to create or modify the screens for your transactions. The screen painter allows you to make modifications to screen attributes, the flow control logic, or the layout.

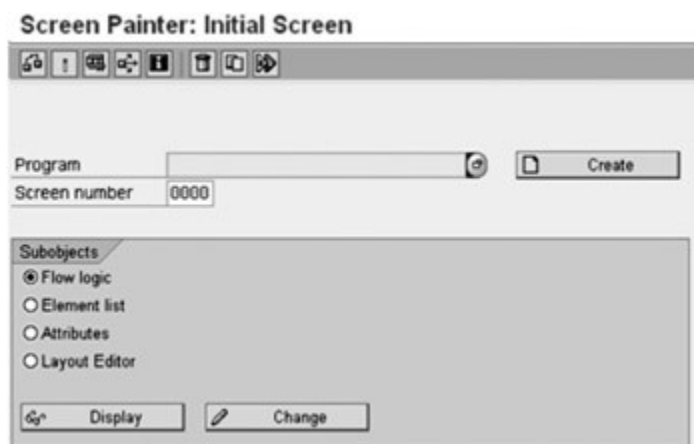


Figure 6: Screen Painter



‘Menu Painter’ is a tool used to design the interface components. Status, Menu Bars, Menu Lists, F-key settings, Functions, and Titles are the components of Menu Painter.

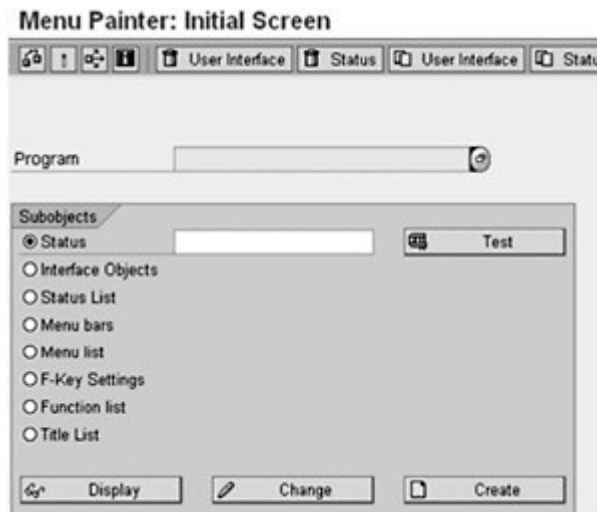


Figure 7: Menu Painter



Both the screen painter and menu painter are graphical interfaces of ABAP/4 applications.

### 43. What is a ‘Modification Assistant’?

The ‘**Modification Assistant**’ is the tool that offers you support when making modifications to the standard, by branching to a ‘special modification mode’ whenever you are modifying objects from the standard in an ABAP workbench editor. Originals are initially protected in this mode and can only be changed with the help of the additional ‘pushbuttons’ that are placed at your disposal.

All changes that you make to the system are logged with the help of the Modification Assistant. This provides you with a detailed overview of modifications that is easy to read and that dramatically reduces the amount of effort needed to upgrade your system.

The Modification Assistant offers support in the following areas:

- ABAP Editor
- Class Builder
- Screen Painter
- Menu Painter
- Text Element maintenance
- Function Builder
- ABAP Dictionary

If an object can be edited using the Modification Assistant, a dialogue box appears the first time that you attempt to edit that object informing you that editing functions are limited in modification mode. This dialogue box appears exactly once per user for each of the various kinds of transport objects.

#### **44. What is a ‘Spool Request’?**

‘Spool Requests’ are generated during ‘dialogue’ or ‘background’ processing and placed in the spool database with information about the printer and print format. The actual data is placed in the Tem Se (Temporary Sequential objects).

#### **45. What is the ‘CTS’?**

The ‘Change and Transport System (CTS)’ is a tool that helps to organize development projects (in the ABAP workbench) and customize data (in customizing), and then move/transport these changes between the SAP Systems/Clients in your system landscape. An example is moving the configuration settings from ‘development’ to ‘test’ and finally to the ‘production’ Client. The changes (such as the creation of a new Company Code, changing a document type, etc.) are assigned to a ‘transport request’ and transported by the Basis or System Administrator.

## 46. What is a 'Transport'?

A '**Transport**' in SAP is nothing but the transfer of R/3 System components from one system to another. The components to be transported are specified in the object list of a transport request.

Each 'transport' consists of an 'export process' and an 'import process':

- The **export process** reads objects from the source system and stores them in a data file at the operating system level.
- The **import process** reads objects from the data file and writes them to the database of the target system.

The system maintains a 'transport log' of all actions during export and import. The '**transport organizer**' helps to manage the transports in SAP.

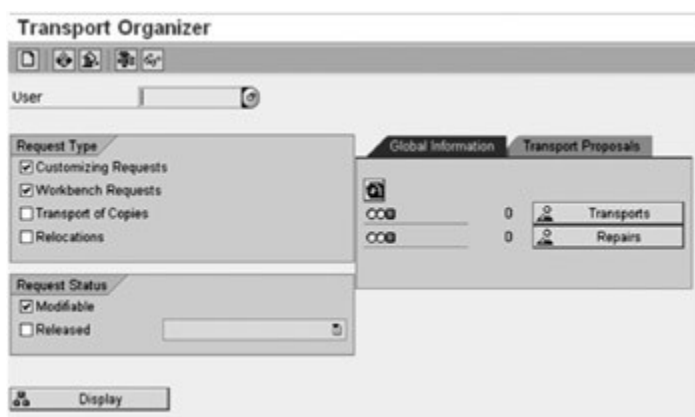


Figure 8: Transport Organizer



## **47. How do You Find Out Who has ‘Transported’ a ‘Transport Request’?**

Look at Table **TPLOG** (go there using the Transaction Code **SE16**) and input the transport name in the **CMDSTRING** field with **‘\*.’** **Example: \*PZDK980001\***

## **48. What is an ‘Authorization’ in SAP?**

An **‘Authorization’** is the process of giving someone permission to do or have something. In multi-user SAP systems, a SAP Basis Administrator defines for the system which users are allowed access to the system and what privileges of use each user gets (such as access to transactions, etc.).

## **49. Explain the ‘Client’ concept of SAP.**

A **‘Client’** is the top-most organizational structure, which has its own set of master records. A Client is denoted by a 3-character alphanumeric code in SAP, and is a mandatory element. The settings made at the Client level, data maintained, etc., are available across all the Company Codes. A Client should have at least one Company Code defined.

SAP comes delivered with Clients 001 and 002, which contain all the default settings. Usually, copying from the default Clients creates additional and new Clients.

Typically, in SAP, you will have different ‘types’ of Clients; namely:

1. Development Client
2. Test Client
3. Production Client

In any implementation, you must have at least three types of Clients as mentioned above. There are some companies where you will have more than three. These include:

- Development Client



- Test Client
- Quality Assurance Client
- Training Client
- Production Client

A **‘Development Client’** is also called a ‘sand box’ Client and is sometimes known as a ‘play’ Client. This is the logical place in the SAP system where you try out new configurations, write new programs, etc. This is the place, as the name suggests, where you can ‘play’ around before finalizing a scenario for customization.

Once you are okay with the configuration or a new program, you will then move it manually (transport) to the **‘Test Client’** where you will carry out all the tests (both modular and integration). The end-users are provided with the training using the ‘training’ Client. Sometimes both the ‘test’ and ‘training’ Client are in a single ‘instance.’ The ‘quality assurance’ Client helps with necessary quality checks before something is ready to be passed on to the ‘production’ Client.

After satisfactory results, it will be transported (automatically) to the **‘Production Client’** (also called the **‘Golden Client’**). You will not be able to make any modifications, manually, to the ‘production’ Client and the authorization is very limited because this Client is responsible for day-to-day business transactions and any issues here will jeopardize all business operations, which is why this is also called the **‘live’** Client.

Do not confuse this term with the ‘Client’ that denotes a customer in normal business parlance.

## **50. How can you Find the Field/Data Underlying a ‘Transaction’?**

A common way to find the technical data underlying a transaction is to place your cursor in the field, press the key **‘F1,’** and then click on the button **‘Technical Data’**

to see the details. This works as long as you are looking at the 'transparent' Table. If the information is populated from a 'structure,' then this will not help you because the 'structure' may be populated from a number of sources including some 'includes,' and may also contain some calculated fields. If the 'include' is in fact a table, then chances are your data comes from that table. Check to see if there is a 'logical' database in the business area you are looking at. Looking at the 'structure' of the 'logical' database often reveals the tables used to drive that business area. Also check to see if the field name you are looking for is in any of the tables. Logical databases can also be useful in determining how tables are linked together.

You may also use other methods (listed below) to zero-in on the field. You can perform any of these, in isolation or in combination, until you find what you are looking for:

- Debugging
- SQL Trace
- Run-time Analysis

Start the 'transaction' in **Debug** mode. Set a 'watch-point' for the structure-field you are interested in. When the debugger 'breaks,' look at the lines just above the 'break-point.' This will show where the field was populated. This may be a 'structure,' in which case you will restart the process using that 'structure' as a 'watch-point.'

Turn **SQL Trace** on, and run your transaction. Switch the 'trace' off, and examine the log. This will detail the tables hit, and the order in which they were hit. Not all tables hit will be displayed; for example, configuration tables tend not to show up, as they are buffered.

The **Runtime Analysis** will show all tables accessed by the transaction.



Figure 9: ABAP Runtime Analysis



## 51. Explain 'LSMW.'

The '**LSMW (Legacy System Migration Workbench)**' is a free SAP-based tool that supports the one-time or periodic transfers of data from non-SAP systems to SAP. The LSMW can be used in conjunction with the **Data Transfer Workbench**. The LSMW assists in organizing your data migration project and guides you through the process by using a clear sequence of steps. The most common conversion rules are predefined. Reusable conversion rules assure consistent data conversion for different data objects.

The LSMW performs the following steps:

- Reads the legacy data from one or several files (such as spreadsheets or sequential files)
- Converts the data from source format to target format
- Imports the data using standard interfaces (**Batch Input, Direct Input, BAPI, IDoc, etc.**)

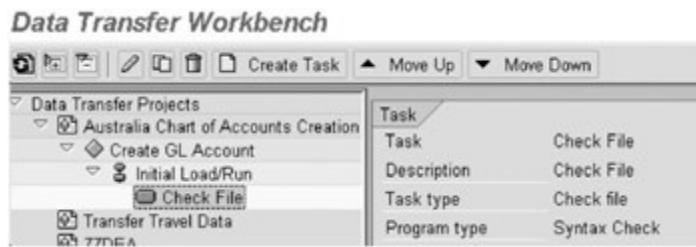


Figure 10: Data Transfer Workbench

## 52. How do you Transport 'LSMW' Data from One System to Another?

There are two ways to do this:

1. **Export/Import method.** With this method, you have the flexibility of subprojects or objects that need to be transported. Use the Menu Path 'LSMW>Extras>Export project.'
2. **Transport request.** With this method, you will not be able to select the objects, and the project as a whole is transported. Use the Menu Path 'LSMW>Extras >Create change request.'

## 53. Can You Transport 'Variants' of Multiple Programs in One Step?

Yes. Use program **RSTRANSP** using Transaction Code: SE38.

## 54. What is 'SAPNet'?

The 'SAPNet' R/3 Front-end provides a remote connection to SAP's service and support group to provide assistance in the event of an implementation project system or production system problem. Additionally, the SAPNet R/3 Front-end provides information on the latest high-priority SAP system information, including error alarm messages that help you prevent problems before they occur. You can also find release, installation, upgrade, and migration information. This functionality is

included in the standard SAP R/3 Basis System. Connection is made using ISDN or a leased line through the project's telecommunications service provider.

## **Project Implementation**

### **55. What is 'ASAP'?**

'**ASAP (Accelerated SAP)**' is a methodology used in SAP for faster and cost-effective implementation of SAP R/3 projects. ASAP helps to (a) reduce the implementation time, (b) achieve quality implementations, and (c) make effective and efficient use of project resources.

ASAP integrates the following three components:

1. ASAP Roadmap
2. Tools (Questionnaires, templates, etc.)
3. R/3 services and training (Hotline, Early Watch, Remote Upgrade, Archiving, etc.)

**ASAP Roadmap** is aimed at providing step-by-step direction and guidance throughout the project implementation by providing a process-oriented, clear and concise project plan. The roadmap meanders through the following milestones or phases in the project implementation lifecycle:

1. Project preparation
2. Business blueprint
3. Realization
4. Final preparation
5. Go-live, support, and continuous improvement

### **56. Explain 'ASAP Roadmap' Phases.**

**Project preparation** is the *first* and initial phase of the ASAP roadmap where you are just starting the project. You will perform activities such as preparation of the

initial scope, high-level timelines and plans, project charters, identification of project team members, project kick-off, etc.

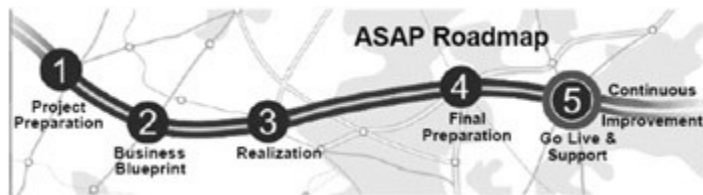


Figure 11: ASAP Roadmap

**Business blueprint** is the *second* phase in the implementation where you will try, identify, and document business requirements and goals to prepare the foundation for future stages of the project. Ideally, you will organize ‘business requirement gathering’ workshops with the various business/functional users of the company, lead them through the discussion with structured business functionality questionnaires, understand their existing business processes, and identify and document their requirements in the wake of this new implementation. A ‘sign-off’ at the end of the phase ensures an agreement to move forward outlining the scope of the project. It is understood that whatever is explicitly stated in the business blueprint document is the only scope; no implied scope will be considered for system configuration in the next phase.

**Realization** is the *third* phase where the implementing team breaks down the business processes identified in the second phase and configures the SAP settings. Initially, you will do a **Baseline Configuration**, test the system functionality and if necessary make changes to the baseline configuration, and close the phase with **Final Configuration**, signalling that all the business processes have been captured and configured in the system.

**Final Preparation** is the *penultimate* phase in the project. This phase also serves to resolve all crucial open issues. A ‘go-live check’ is also conducted to analyze whether the system has been properly configured. This phase is marked by the following activities:

- End-to-testing of the configured system (User Acceptance Test—UAT)
- Training of the end users (Usually follows the concept ‘Train-the-Trainer’)
- System management activities (creation of users, user profiles, allocation of roles to profiles, etc.)
- Cut-over (data migration activities)

An ‘internal help desk’ should be staffed and supported mainly by employees of the enterprise. Setting up a help desk involves, among other things, installing office and technical equipment and defining OSS users. Problems that cannot be solved by this internal help desk are forwarded to SAP via the **SAPNet/OSS** system.

On successful completion of this phase, you are ready to run your business in your production system.

**Go-Live and Support** is the final and *fifth* phase of the project where the configured system is declared ‘live’ for day-to-day business use. Users make productive (live) business transactions in the system and all the issues cropping up in the wake of going live are supported and resolved by a support team immediately.

## **57. List the Tools for the ‘Project Preparation Phase’ of ‘ASAP.’**

- ASAP Roadmap
- Knowledge Corner
- ASAP MS-Project Plan
- C-Maps (Collaborative Business Maps)
- Quicksizer
- Pre-Configured Solutions (Connect-and-Go, Smart Implementations, etc.)
- SAP Service Market Place

## **58. List the Tools for 'Business Case Development' in 'ASAP.'**

- E-Business Case Builder
- C-Maps

## **59. List the Tools for 'Project Management and Methodology' in 'ASAP.'**

- Solution Manager
- SAP Service Market Place
- ASAP MS-Project Plan
- ASAP Roadmap
- ASAP Question and Answer Database
- ASAP Business Blueprint
- ASAP BPP (Business Process and Procedures Document)
- ASAP BPML (Business Process Master List)
- ASAP Issue Database
- ASAP Implementation Assistant/Knowledge Corner

## **60. When do You Use the 'ASAP BPML' Tool?**

The ASAP '**Business Process Master List (BPML)**' is used during the Realization (third phase) of the ASAP Roadmap.

## **61. Explain 'Hardware' Sizing for a SAP Implementation.**

ASAP provides a tool called **Quicksizer**, which is used to analyze the hardware requirements (of [mySAP.com](http://mySAP.com)) and to arrive at the hardware sizing for the project based on your inputs to a list of questions. The tool is Web-based to make [mySAP.com](http://mySAP.com) faster and easier. The Quicksizer has been developed by SAP in close



cooperation with all platform partners and is free. The Quicksizer calculates CPU, disk, and memory resources based on throughput numbers and the number of users working with the different SAP components. The tool gives customers (and prospects) an idea of the system size requirements for running the proposed workload, and is also useful for initial budget planning. Initially used during the Project Preparation and Blueprinting Phases, and anytime after these phases when there is a change in system requirements, the tool helps in arriving at the recommendations for hardware deployment.

## **62. Explain 'ASAP BPML.'**

**'ASAP BPMLs (Business Process Master Lists)'** are MS-Excel Sheets generated by the ASAP Q&A Database for facilitating configuration and testing of the system, and development of end-user documentation. These lists become the central repository from which you build the individual master lists to manage the initial configuration, final configuration, final end-user integration testing, and any other end-user procedures including the documentation.

## **63. What are 'BPPs' in ASAP?**

**'ASAP BPP (Business Process and Procedures)'** are templates that typically walk you through a transaction in SAP and help you document them. The templates are replete with Best Practices or Standard Procedures for completing a particular transaction, which you can customize for end-user training. You will assign ASAP BPPs to the ASAP BPML.

## **64. Explain 'C-Maps.'**

**'C-Maps' or C-Business Maps (Collaborative Business Maps)** represent a comprehensive portfolio of industry-specific and cross-industry process blueprints that show you how the [mySAP.com](http://mySAP.com) e-business platform can help your business. These maps define the activities, roles, system interfaces, and business documents

required for inter-enterprise collaboration. They also show which SAP Solutions and Services you need to make your organization a truly collaborative e-business.

C-Business Maps explain what happens when you deploy e-business solutions to integrate existing resources and transcend the borders of individual enterprises. They give you a complete picture of the benefits and advantages of collaborative business processes.

## **65. What is the Advantage of SAP's 'Smart Implementations'?**

'**Smart Implementations**' contain pre-configuration, documentation, installation, and configuration accelerators for specific mySAP components. Smart Implementations provide tools to assist with technical infrastructure planning, installation of necessary components, system configuration and integration into an existing SAP system landscape, and infrastructure management in a production system.

The Smart Implementation for the mySAP Workplace includes the following installation and configuration features:

- Easy system infrastructure configuration with the **Configuration Assistant**
- Automatic **mySAP Workplace** component installation
- Easy integration of multiple component systems
- Pre-configuration of all software components, including the Web server and Internet Transaction Server (ITS)
- Basis customization of the SAP R/3 System (Workplace Server)
- The **System Administration Assistant**, an easy-to-use tool providing a comprehensive administration concept to support the system administrator in important tasks.

## 66. What is the 'SAP Solution Architect'?

The 'SAP Solution Architect' is the portal that integrates all content, tools, and methodologies necessary for the solution-oriented evaluation, implementation, quick adaptation, and continuous improvement of the **mySAP.com e-Business platform**. It is fully integrated into the Customer Engagement Life Cycle (CEL), open to partner content, and an integral part of the SAP Service Infrastructure.

In one portal, the SAP Solution Architect integrates:

- **Best Practices** for mySAP.com to evaluate, implement, and extend e-Business solutions.
- Tried and tested implementation tools such as the **Implementation Guide (IMG)** and the **Test Workbench**.
- Access to **C-Business Maps** for in-depth information on collaborative business scenarios.
- The **ASAP** method for running mySAP.com projects.
- An authoring environment with which customers and partners can create their own pre-configured implementation solutions.
- Access to evaluation products such as the **E-Business Case Builder** and the **Solution Composer**.

The benefits of using the SAP Solution Architect include:

- Consistent access to all contents, tools, and methods for evaluating, implementing, adapting, and continuously improving your mySAP.com e-business solution.
- Rapid evaluation and implementation with Best Practices for mySAP.com.
- Tried and tested evaluation and implementation tools that have been enhanced specifically for use with mySAP.com.
- Improved project communication and efficiency through a central portal.

- A consistent and integrated approach that passes the business-oriented project definition from one phase to the next.
- Complete alignment with the ASAP Roadmap.
- Information about updates, training, and changes via the SAP Service Marketplace.

## **67. What is 'Configuration' in SAP?**

**'Configuration'** is the process of maintaining settings (parameters) in the system to support specific/customized business requirements. Remember SAP is an 'all-encompassing' application which needs to be 'configured' to meet your specific requirements.

## **68. What is the 'IMG'?**

The **'IMG (Implementation Guide)'** in SAP provides you with the various configuration steps in a tree-like structure for easy access with the nodes at the bottom representing the configuration objects. This is the central repository for customizing, providing a step-by-step guide for carrying out various activities. Besides the steps/activities, the IMG also contains explanations concerning the order in which you need to make the customizations. When you execute an activity from the IMG, you are indirectly changing the values (parameters) in the underlying table.



Figure 12: SAP R/3 IMG

The IMG is structured and arranged into four major logical groups:

1. **General Settings** (Country settings, currencies, calendar maintenance, time zones, field display characteristics, etc.)
2. **Enterprise Structure** (Definition, assignment, consistency check, etc.)
3. **Cross-Application Components** (ALE, Time sheet, CATT, CAD integration, DM-Document Management, EDI, Engineering Change Management (ECM), etc.)
4. **Functional Area Settings** (FI, CO, Logistics, PP, PM, QM, etc.)



## 69. Explain the Various 'Types' of IMGs.

The **SAP Reference IMG** provides all the customizing steps for all functional areas of SAP. This, as the name suggests, is the 'reference IMG' from which you may

create your own IMG to meet the exact requirements of the (1) enterprise and (2) project.

The **Enterprise IMG** is usually an exact copy of the ‘SAP Reference IMG,’ but limited to the countries where the implementation is carried out. From the Enterprise IMG, you may create your Project IMG, which will contain the application components/business processes required in the current project.

It is also possible to create the **Project IMG** by directly generating it from the SAP Reference IMG. In this case, the country selection is done when the Project IMGs are created.

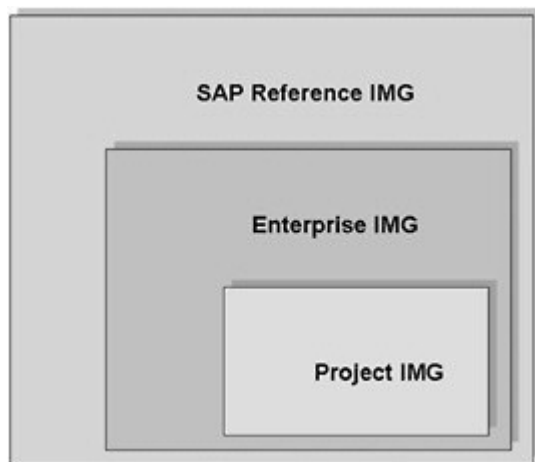


Figure 13: IMG (Reference, Enterprise, and Project)

## 70. What are All the Various Ways of ‘Customizing’?

You can customize SAP using:

- **IMG:** Just follow the IMG tree, step-by-step. No technical knowledge (about tables, views, etc.) is required.

**Example:** To configure the ‘Country Code,’ just follow the IMG Menu Path ‘General settings>Set countries>Define countries.’

- **Tables:** You need to know the name and structure of the tables where the parameters are directly entered. Technical knowledge of customizable objects is required.

**Example:** To configure the ‘Country Code,’ use transaction code: **OY01**. Enter the details in Table **V\_T005**.

## **71. Why is the ‘IMG’ Route of Customizing Easier than the ‘Tables’ Route?**

- IMG is a logical way to access data from multiple physical tables without knowing from where the data is flowing. This is because there are many transactions, which affect more than one table.
- There is no need to know the names of Tables and fields, though it always helps to know about the major tables.
- IMG offers a step-by-step way of progressing from one activity to the other. Also, you can classify the activities into various views such as ‘mandatory/critical/optional,’ ‘Client-dependent/Client-independent,’ etc., so that you can proceed per your requirements and time.
- Since IMG provides you with the functional view, it becomes easier to ‘configure’ and test immediately.

## **72. What is known as the ‘Go-Live Check’?**

The ‘**Go-Live Check**’ is done just before you cut over to ‘live’ (production) operation in a project. This is to test whether the system is properly configured to meet the requirements of the business. The check includes detecting problems in the (a) SAP R/3 Application, (b) Database, and (c) Operating System.

First, the **Go-live Check** involves an analysis of the major system components of the R/3 installation with regard to system consistency and reliability. For this, SAP experts log on to your R/3 system via a remote connection, inspect the configuration

of individual system components, and provide valuable recommendations for system optimization. By analyzing the individual system components before production start up, SAP can considerably improve the availability and performance of the customer's live system. In addition, the technical application analysis provides information on how to speed up the core processes within R/3.

Secondly, the transactions with high resource consumption are searched for and necessary adjustments are made.

Thirdly, the changes from the two prior sessions are validated. This check is performed in the productive operation system.

After a system goes live, some fine tuning and eliminating of potential bottlenecks is still necessary. This is carried out four weeks after 'going live' with the R/3 System.

### **73. When Should You Conduct 'Business Process Re-engineering' (BPR)?**

Typically 'Business Process Re-engineering (BPR)' needs to be completed well before the SAP implementation starts. This will help to identify any improvements that can be made prior to implementation and begin the process of change within the organization. Improvements that will be system-enabled will form part of the implementation and also help the project team to identify areas of change.

However, it is also possible (but not recommended if there are large areas requiring total process re-engineering) to do BPR during the business blueprint phase provided the project team works within the boundary of the initial scope provided.

### **74. What are 'User Parameters'?**

SAP provides a way of lessening your day-to-day data entry operations by facilitating default entries for fields, and bringing out the most suitable **Display Variant** for document display, document entry, open/line item processing, etc. The user



parameters, also known as '**Editing Options**,' are a boon as they save time and result in greater accuracy as data entry errors are eliminated with the default values.

You can, among many alternatives, set:

1. The system to default the 'exchange rate' from the first line item.
2. A preference so that the user does not process any 'special GL transactions' or 'foreign currency transactions.'
3. That the document needs to be complete before it is 'parked.'
4. The system to calculate the tax component on the 'net' invoice and not on the 'gross.'
5. Your document currency either as the 'local currency' or as the one used in the last document.
6. The system to make a currency conversion if documents are to be fetched from 'archives.'
7. Documents to be displayed using a 'reference number.'
8. 'Payment reference' to be used as a selection item in open item processing.
9. To activate branch/head office 'dialogue' while processing line items.



# **Financial Accounting (FI)**

## **General**

### **75. Explain 'Financial Accounting (FI)' in SAP.**

The 'FI (Financial Accounting)' module of SAP is the back-bone, which records, collects, and processes financial transactions or information on a real-time basis to provide the necessary inputs for external (statutory) reporting. The module is integrated with other modules (such as Material Management (MM), Sales & Distribution (SD), Human Resources (HR), Production Planning (PP), Controlling (CO), etc.). The module FI has several submodules that are tightly integrated.

### **76. What are the 'Submodules' within FI?**

- **FI-AA Asset Accounting**

Integrated with FI-GL, FI-AR, FI-AP, CO, MM, PP and PM, this module manages the financial side (depreciation, insurance, etc.) of the assets throughout their entire lifecycle starting with procurement of assets and ending with scrapping or sales.

- **FI-AP Accounts Payable**

Integrated with FI-GL, FI-AA, FI-TR and MM, this submodule manages vendor transactions by linking with material management, asset accounting, travel management, etc. Notable is the 'payment program' for making payments to vendors.

- **FI-AR Accounts Receivable**

Integrated with FI-GL, FI-AA, FI-TR, MM and SD, this submodule manages customers and receivables, and integrates with SD. It is well-known for credit management functionalities and the 'dunning' program.

- **FI-BL Bank Accounting**
- **FI-FM Funds Management**
- **FI-GL General Ledger Accounting**

This submodule is integrated with all other submodules within FI and outside FI.

- **FI-SL Special Purpose Ledger**

This submodule is used to provide the summary information from multiple applications at a level of detail that the user defines.

- **FI-LC Legal Consolidations**

This submodule helps in the central task of combining the financial operating results of the companies within a group to provide overall results for the group.

- **FI-TM Travel Management**

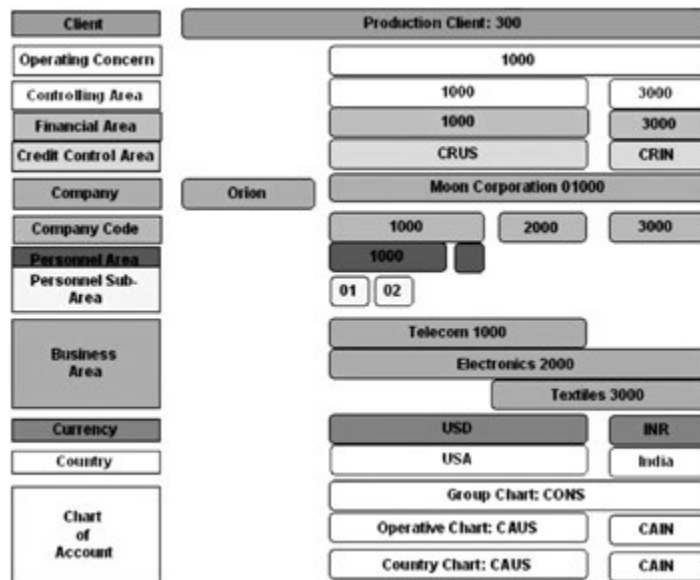
## **77. Name the Submodules Within FI, from Which FI-GL Gets Simultaneous Postings.**

- Accounts Receivable (FI-AR)
- Accounts Payable (FI-AP)
- Asset Accounting (FI-AA)

## **78. Name Three Distinct Characteristics of FI-GL.**

- Multi-currency capability
- Flexible real-time reporting
- Real-time transaction entries

Before getting into the questions, please look into the FI organization structure depicted below. When moving through the questions, at any point in time if you need clarification on the arrangement of the various organizational elements, do visit this page again. To be successful as an FI/CO consultant you need to have a thorough grasp of this basic fundamental block in SAP FI/CO.



### 79. What do You mean by 'Organizational Units' in SAP?

### 80. What are the Important 'Organizational Units' in FI?

1. Company
2. Company Code
3. Business area

## 81. What is a 'Company'?

A 'Company' in SAP is represented by a 5-character alphanumeric code and usually represents the enterprise or the group company. A Company can include one or more Company Codes. The creation of a Company, in SAP, is optional.

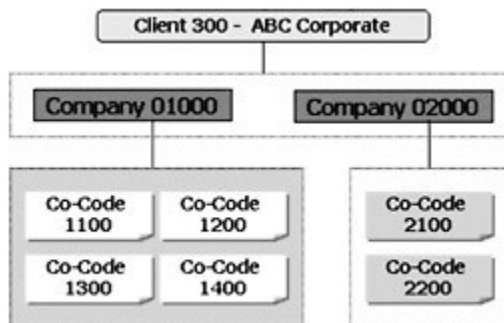


Figure 15: Company and Company Code

Company	9999M
Company name	Model Companies Worldwide
Name of company 2	Model Companies Worldwide
Detailed information	
Street	West Promenade
P.O.Box	
Postal code	60000
City	Frankfurt
Country	DE
Language key	DE
Currency	EUR

Figure 16: Define a Company

## 82. What is a 'Company Code,' and how is this different from a 'Company'?

A 'Company Code' in SAP is the smallest organizational unit for which you can draw individual Financial Statements (Balance Sheet and Profit & Loss Account) for your external statutory reporting. It is denoted by a 4-character alphanumeric code. The creation of a Company Code is mandatory; you need to have at least one Company Code defined in the system, for implementing FI.

Company Code	9999
Company name	MODEL COMPANY
<b>Additional data</b>	
City	Frankfurt
Country	DE
Currency	EUR
Language	DE

Figure 17: Define a Company Code

You may define a Company Code by copying from an existing one (Copy, Delete, Check Company Code Option).



You may also define the Company Code anew (the second option in the following figure), from scratch.

Copy, delete, check company code
Edit Company Code Data

Figure 18: Options to define a Company Code

### 83. What are the Important 'Global Settings' for a Company Code?

General data:

- Company Code
- Company Name
- City
- Address

- Currency
- Country
- Language

Global data:

- Chart of Accounts
- Credit Control Area
- Fiscal Year Variant
- Field Status Variant
- Posting Period Variant

## 84. Can You Assign more than One ‘Company Code’ to a ‘Company’?

All the Company Codes within a Company should use the same Chart of Accounts and the same Financial Year, though they all can have different Local Currencies.

## 85. What is a ‘Business Area’?

‘**Business Areas**’ correspond to specific business segments of a company, and may cut across different Company Codes (for example, product lines). They can also represent different responsibility areas (for example, branch units). The **Business Areas** are optional in SAP.

2000	Plant engineering & construct.
3000	Automotive
3400	Metal, Wood and Paper
3500	Aerospace & Defence
4000	Chemicals
4500	Engineering & Construction
5000	Consumer Products: Non-Food
6000	Pharmaceuticals
7000	Electronic Products

Figure 19: Business Area

The financial statements drawn per business area are for internal reporting purposes. You need to put a check in the check box in the configuration for the company for which you want to enable business area financial statements.

9990	India Inc.	Chennai
9999	MODEL COMPANY	Frankfurt

Figure 20: Enable Business Area Financial Statements



When transactions are posted in FI, you have the option of assigning the same to a Business Area so that the values are properly captured for internal financial statements.

## 86. Can You Attach a ‘Business Area’ to a Transaction?

Yes. The Business Area can also be derived from other account assignments; for example, cost center. But to do this, you need to define the Business Area in the master record of that particular cost center.

## 87. How do You Post Cross-company Code Business Area postings?

By using a cross-Company Code transaction, you should be able to post to different ‘Business Areas’ and cut across various Company Codes. Any number of ‘Business Area-Company Code’ combinations is possible.

## 88. What is the ‘Credit Control Area’ in SAP?

The ‘Credit Control Area’ in SAP helps administer credit management functions relating to customers. This organizational unit is used both in SD and FI-AR modules. By definition, you can have more than one credit control area in a Client,



but each Company Code is assigned to one credit control area. However, it is true that you can attach many Company Codes to the same credit control area.

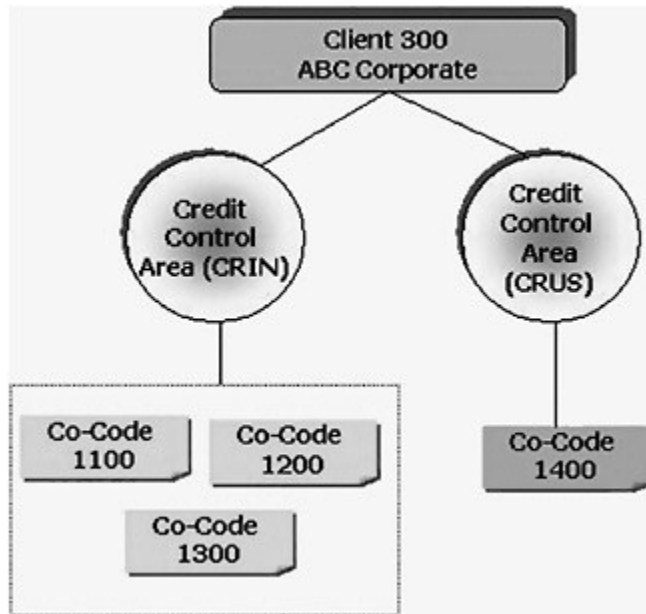


Figure 21: Credit Control Area

## 89. What is a 'Chart of Accounts'?

A 'Chart of Accounts' is the list of GL accounts used in one or more Company Codes. All the GL accounts in a chart of accounts will have an account number, account name, and some control information. The control information decides how the GL account can be created.

## 90. What are all the Major Components of a 'Chart of Accounts'?

A 'Chart of Accounts' includes the following components:

- Chart of account key
- Name
- Maintenance language
- The GL Account Number

- Controlling integration
- Group chart of accounts (consolidation)
- Block indicator

## **91. What is an ‘Operating Chart of Accounts’?**

This chart is used for day-to-day postings and is also known as an **‘Operative’** or **‘Standard’** chart of accounts. Both FI and CO use a chart of accounts. It is mandatory that the chart of accounts be assigned to a Company Code.

## **92. How does ‘Group Chart of Accounts’ Differ from ‘Operating Chart of Accounts’?**

The **‘Group Chart of Accounts,’** also known as the **Corporate Chart of Accounts,** is used for consolidating all Company Codes (with a dissimilar Operative Chart of Accounts) falling under a Company. This is the ‘universe’ of all-inclusive GL accounts from where the Operative Chart of Accounts is derived. A Company Code is not mandatory.

## **93. What is a ‘Country Chart of Accounts’? Why do You need This?**

This chart of accounts, also known as an **Alternate Chart of Accounts,** contains the GL accounts necessary to meet the specific statutory/legal requirements of a company from which a Company Code operates. The assignment of this chart of accounts to a Company Code is also optional. It is possible that both the operative and the country chart of accounts are one and the same. In this case, you will not need two different charts of accounts.

In cases where the operative and country chart of accounts are different, a link needs to be established by entering the GL account number from the ‘Country Chart of Accounts’ in the GL master record (under the Company Code section) of the ‘Operative Chart of Accounts’ in the field ‘Alternate Account Number.’

## 94. Can one 'Chart of Accounts' be Assigned to Several Company Codes?

Yes. One chart of accounts can be assigned to several Company Codes. However, the reverse is not possible; i.e., you will not be able assign more than one chart of accounts to a single Company Code.

## 95. What is a 'Fiscal Year' and 'Fiscal Year Variant'?

A 'fiscal year' is the accounting period, which normally spreads over 12 months. Financial statements are drawn for a fiscal year. The fiscal year, in SAP, is defined as a 'Fiscal Year Variant.' All **Calendar Year Fiscal Year Variants**, in standard SAP, are denoted usually as K1, K2, etc.

FY	Description	Year-depend...	Calendar yr	Number of posti...	No. of special pe...
F1	365 periods	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	365	
I4	Calendar year, 4 spec. periods	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	12	4
K0	Calendar year, 1 spec. period	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	12	
K1	Calendar year, 1 spec. period	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	12	1
K2	Calendar year, 2 spec. periods	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	12	2
K3	Calendar year, 3 spec. periods	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	12	3
K4	Calendar year, 4 spec. periods	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	12	4
Q1	Quarters	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	4	
R1	Short fiscal year Jan-Sept. 94	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	12	4
U1	Special Purpose Ledger	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	100	
V3	Apr. - March, 4 special periods	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	12	4

Figure 22: Fiscal Year Variant

The fiscal year may or may not correspond to the calendar year. In the standard SAP system, the Non-Calendar Fiscal Year Variants are denoted V1, V2, etc.

V3	Apr. - March, 4 special periods	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	12	4
V8	July - June, 4 special periods	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	12	4
V9	Oct. - Sept., 4 special periods	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	12	4

Figure 23: Fiscal Year Variant (non-calendar year)

It is also possible that the fiscal year may be shorter than 12 months, and this is called a '**Shortened Fiscal Year**' (R1, in [Figure-1](#)).



## 96. How do You Assign a ‘Fiscal Year Variant’ to a Company Code?

One ‘Fiscal Year Variant’ can be assigned to one or more Company Codes.

9990	India Inc.	X4	Calendar year, 4 spec. periods
9999	MODEL COMPANY	X4	Calendar year, 4 spec. periods

Figure 24: Assign Fiscal Year Variant to a Company Code



## 97. What is a ‘Posting Period’?

A fiscal year, in SAP, is divided into various ‘Posting Periods,’ with a start and end date defined for each of these periods. Any document posting is possible only when the ‘posting periods’ are in place in the system. Normally there will be 12 posting periods. A posting period consists of a month and year.

## 98. How does the System Identify a ‘Posting Period’?

Based on the posting date entered into the system while posting a document, the system automatically determines the period by looking at the document date and the year. However, for this to occur you should have properly defined the fiscal year variant.

## **99. What Happens when you Post to Year 2006 when you are in 2007?**

First of all, to post a document relating to a previous year, say 2006 when you are in 2007, the relevant posting period should be 'open' in the system. When such a posting is done, the system makes some adjustments in the background:

One: the carry-forward balances of the current year, already done, are updated in case the posting affects balance sheet items.

Two: if the posting is going to affect the Profit & Loss accounts, then the system adjusts the carried forward profit or loss balances to the Retained Earnings account(s).

## **100. What do you Mean by 'Opening/Closing' Posting Periods?**

Postings in SAP are controlled by the 'opening' or 'closing' of posting periods. Normally, the current posting period is open for document posting and all other periods are closed. At the end of the period (month), this posting period is closed and the new one is opened for postings. This way it provides better control.

It is, however, possible to keep all the periods or select periods open.



## **101. What is a 'Posting Period Variant'?**

A 'Posting Period Variant' is useful in 'opening/closing' posting periods across many Company Codes at one time. You define a posting period variant and assign it to various Company Codes. Since the posting period variant is cross-Company Code, the opening and closing of the posting period is made simple. Instead of opening and

closing individually for different Company Codes, you just need to open or close the posting period variant.

## **102. Can You Selectively ‘Open’ and ‘Close’ accounts?**

Yes. It is possible to selectively control the ‘opening’ and ‘closing’ for various types of accounts. Usually, a ‘+’ is mentioned in the top-most entry indicating that all the account types are allowed for posting. Now, for the GL(S) accounts, you will need to specify the period which needs to be opened. This ensures that all the account types are open for the current period, indicated by ‘+,’ and only the GL accounts are open for the previous period.

Select account types can also be opened or closed for a specific period; select accounts within an account type can also be opened or closed.

## **103. Why is it not Possible to Post to a Customer A/C in a Previously Closed ‘Period’?**

When you want to selectively ‘close’ or ‘open’ the posting period of some accounts (account range), there will be no problem with that if you are doing it for GL accounts. But, if it is a sub ledger account (such as the customer), it has to be achieved via opening or closing the account interval of the ‘reconciliation account’ of that account type.

## **104. Can You Open a ‘Posting Period’ only for a Particular User?**

Yes. SAP allows you to open or close the posting period only for specific users. This can be achieved by maintaining an **authorization group** at the document header level.

## **105. What is a ‘Special Period’? When do You Use it?**

Besides the normal posting periods, SAP allows for defining a maximum four more posting periods, which are known as ‘**Special Periods**’ as these are used for year-end

closing activities. This is achieved by dividing the last posting period into more than one (maximum four) period. However, all the postings in these special periods should fall within the last posting period.

The special periods cannot be determined automatically by the system based on the posting date of the document. The special period needs to be manually entered into the 'posting period' field in the document header.

### **106. What is the Maximum Number of 'Posting Periods' in SAP?**

Under GL accounting, you can have a maximum of 16 posting periods (12 regular plus 4 Special Periods). However, you can have up to a maximum of 366 posting periods as is the case in 'special purpose ledgers.'

### **107. What is a 'Special Purpose Ledger'?**

'Special Purpose Ledgers' (FI-SL) are used in reporting. These are basically user-defined ledgers, which can be maintained either as GL or subsidiary ones with various account assignment objects (with SAP-dimensions such as cost center, business area, profit center, etc., or customer-defined dimensions such as region, area, etc.).

Once defined, this functionality helps you to report at various levels. Ideally you collect the information, combine it, and create the totals. This is something such as an additional reporting feature, and use of this feature will have no effect on the regular functionalities of SAP.

### **108. What Variations are Possible when defining a 'Fiscal Year'?**

- **The Fiscal Year is the same as a Calendar Year**

The fiscal year starts on January 1 and there are 12 posting periods; the posting periods correspond to the calendar months; there is no need to define each of the posting periods.

➡ Open table as spreadsheet

<b><u>Posting Period</u></b>	<b><u>Start Date</u></b>	<b><u>End Date</u></b>
1	1-Jan	31-Jan
2	1-Feb	28/29 Feb
3	1-Mar	31-Mar
4	1-Apr	30-Apr
5	1-May	31-May
6	1-Jun	30-Jun
7	1-Jul	31-Jul
8	1-Aug	31-Aug
9	1-Sep	30-Sep
10	1-Oct	31-Oct
11	1-Nov	30-Nov
12	1-Dec	31-Dec

- **The Fiscal Year is NOT the same as a Calendar Year**

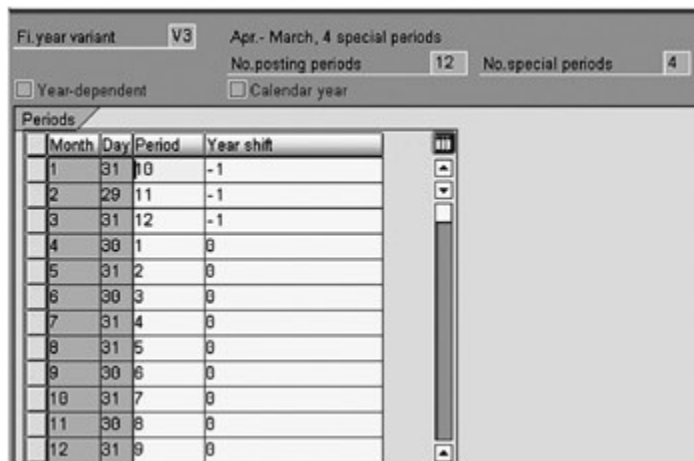
In this case, you need to specify how many posting periods you want and how the system should derive the posting period. Since the posting period does not correspond to the calendar month, the start and end date of each of the posting periods need to be maintained.



## 109. What is known as ‘Year Shift/Displacement’ in a Fiscal Year?

When the fiscal year is not the same as the calendar year, we need to define a **‘displacement factor’** for each of the posting periods to correctly identify the number of posting periods.

For example, consider the fiscal year variant V3 ([Figure 25](#)). The fiscal year starts on April 1<sup>st</sup> and ends on March 31<sup>st</sup> of the next calendar year so the displacement factor or year shift from April to December is ‘0,’ and for January to March, it will be ‘-1’. By defining it this way, the system is able to recognize the correct posting period. A posting made on January 25<sup>th</sup>, 2006 will then be interpreted as the 10<sup>th</sup> posting period in fiscal year 2005.



Month	Day	Period	Year shift
1	31	10	-1
2	29	11	-1
3	31	12	-1
4	30	1	0
5	31	2	0
6	30	3	0
7	31	4	0
8	31	5	0
9	30	6	0
10	31	7	0
11	30	8	0
12	31	9	0


Figure 25: Year shift/displacement in Fiscal Year Variant

## 110. Can you have ‘non-Calendar’ Months as ‘Periods’ in a ‘non-Calendar’ Fiscal Year?

Yes. The **‘non-calendar fiscal year’** can either correspond to calendar months or to non-calendar months.

In the case of non-calendar months as the posting periods, you need to specify the start and end date of these posting periods. Consider a fiscal year starting on April 16<sup>th</sup>, 2005 and ending on April 15<sup>th</sup>, 2006. Here, the posting period-1 starts on April

16<sup>th</sup> and ends on May 15<sup>th</sup> and so on. Note that the posting period-9 will have 2 displacements (0 and –1) as indicated below in the Table:

 [Open table as spreadsheet](#)

<b><u>Posting Period</u></b>	<b><u>Start Date</u></b>	<b><u>End Date</u></b>	<b><u>Year</u></b>	<b><u>Year Displacement</u></b>
1	16–Apr	15–May	2005	0
2	16–May	15–Jun	2005	0
3	16–Jun	15–Jul	2005	0
4	16–Jul	15–Aug	2005	0
5	16–Aug	15–Sep	2005	0
6	16–Sep	15–Oct	2005	0
7	16–Oct	15–Nov	2005	0
8	16–Nov	15–Dec	2005	0
9	16–Dec	31–Dec	2005	0
9	1–Jan	15–Jan	2006	–1
10	16–Jan	15–Feb	2006	–1
11	16–Feb	15–Mar	2006	–1
12	16–Mar	15–Apr	2006	–1

As a result, a posting made on December 27<sup>th</sup>, 2005, as well as the posting made on January 14<sup>th</sup>, 2006 are correctly identified as postings corresponding to period-9.

### **111. What is a ‘Year-dependent’ Fiscal Year?**

A calendar year fiscal variant, when defined as ‘**year-dependent,**’ is relevant and valid only for that year.

## **112. What Precautions should you take while defining a ‘Shortened Fiscal Year’?**

Note that the ‘**Shortened Fiscal Year**’ is always year-dependent. This has to be followed or preceded by a full fiscal year (12 months). Both the shortened and the full fiscal year, in this case, have to be defined using a single fiscal year variant.

## **113. Tell me more about a ‘Shortened Fiscal Year.’**

As mentioned already, a ‘**Shortened Fiscal Year**’ is one containing less than 12 months. This kind of fiscal year is required when you are in the process of setting up a company, or when you switch over one fiscal year (e.g., calendar year) to another type of fiscal year (non-calendar).

## **114. How do you Open a new ‘Fiscal Year’ in the System?**

You do not need to ‘open’ the new fiscal year as a separate activity. Once you make a posting into the new fiscal year, the new fiscal year is automatically opened. Or, the new fiscal year is automatically opened when you run the ‘**balance carry-forward**’ program.

However, you need to have (1) the relevant posting period already open in the new fiscal year, (2) completed the document number range assignment if you are following a year-dependent number range assignment, and (3) defined a new fiscal year variant if you follow the year-dependent fiscal year variant.

## **115. How do you ‘Carry-Forward’ Account Balances?**

If you have already posted into the new fiscal year, you do not need to ‘**carry-forward**’ the balances manually. But you can use the various ‘carry-forward’ programs supplied by SAP for this task.

## **116. Can You Explain how ‘Carry-Forward’ Happens in SAP?**

Sure. For all the Balance Sheet items, the balances of these accounts are just carried forward to the new fiscal year, along with account assignments if any. This also true for customer and vendor accounts.

In the case of Profit & Loss accounts, the system carries forward the profit or loss (in the local currency) to the Retained Earnings account, and the balances of these accounts are set to ‘0.’ No additional account assignments are transferred.

## **117. Is there a Prerequisite for ‘Carry-Forward’ Activity?**

Yes, for Profit & Loss accounts, you should have defined the Retained Earnings account in the system. Additionally, you should have also specified the ‘**Profit & Loss Account Type**’ in the master record of each of these for Profit & Loss accounts.

There are no such requirements for GL accounts, customer and vendor accounts.

## **118. How many ‘Retained Earnings’ A/C can be Defined?**

You can define as many ‘**Retained Earnings Accounts**’ as you need. But normally, companies use only **one** retained earnings account. Remember, to define more than one, you should use the profit & loss account type.

## **119. Can you have Multiple ‘Retained Earnings’ A/C?**

Normally it is sufficient if you use one ‘**retained earnings**’ account. However, if you are configuring for a multinational company where the legal requirements require treating some of the tax provisions differently from other countries, then you will need more than one retained earnings account.

## **120. How do You Maintain ‘Currency’ in SAP?**

‘**Currency**’ (the legal means of payment in a country) in SAP is denoted by a 3-character **Currency Code**, maintained per ISO standards. Example: USD (U.S.

Dollars), INR (Indian Rupee), GBP (Great Britain Pound), etc. Each currency code in the system will have a validity defined.

A currency is defined in SAP using the IMG path: General settings>Currencies >Check exchange rate types.

## **121. What is a ‘Local Currency’?**

When you define a Company Code, you also need to mention in which currency you will be maintaining the accounts/ledgers in financial accounting. This currency is called the ‘**Local Currency.**’ This is also known as ‘**Company Code Currency.**’

## **122. What is a ‘Parallel Currency’?**

When defining the currencies for a Company Code, it is possible to maintain, for each of these company Codes, *two more currencies* in addition to the ‘Local Currency.’ These two currencies are called the ‘**Parallel Currencies,**’ which can be the:

- Group Currency
- Hard Currency
- Global Company Currency
- Index-based Currency

To translate the values from one currency to the other, you will need to maintain an **exchange rate** for each pair of the defined currencies in the system. When parallel currencies are defined, the system maintains the accounting ledgers in these currencies as well, in addition to the local currency.

## **123. What is a ‘Group Currency’?**

This is the currency defined at the Client level.

## **124. What is the 'Global Company Code Currency'?**

The currency defined for the Company (or the Consolidated Company) is called the **'Global Company Code Currency.'**

## **125. What is an 'Account Currency'?**

When defining the GL accounts in the system, you are required to define a currency in which an account will be maintained, and this is called the **'Account Currency.'** This is defined in the 'Company Code' area of the GL master record, and is used for postings and account balance display.

## **126. What are all the Prerequisites for Posting in a 'Foreign Currency'?**

The following are the prerequisites you need to consider before posting in a foreign currency:

- Local currency already defined for the Company Code (in the global parameters)
- Foreign currency defined in the currency code Table
- Exchange rate defined for the foreign currency and the local currency
- Translation Ratio maintained for the local and foreign currency

## **127. How are 'Exchange Rates' Maintained in SAP?**

An **'Exchange Rate'** is defined for each pair of currencies, and for each 'exchange rate type' defined in the system. The exchange rate is defined at the document header level.

## **128. What is an 'Exchange Rate Type'? List some of them.**

The **'Exchange Rate Type'** is defined according to various purposes such as valuation, translation, planning, conversion, etc. The commonly used exchange rate types include:

B	Standard translation at bk. selling rate
G	Standard translation at bank buying rate
I	Intrastat exchange rate type
INT	Internal clearing exchange rate
M	Standard translation at average rate
P	Standard translation for cost planning

Figure 26: Exchange Rate Types

## 129. What is known as the ‘Translation Factor’?

The relation between a pair of currencies per ‘exchange rate type’ is known as the ‘**Translation Factor.**’ For example, the translation factor is 1 when you define the exchange rate for the currencies USD and INR:

$$\frac{\text{USD}}{\text{INR}} = \frac{1}{1}$$

## 130. Is there an Easy Way to Maintain Exchange Rates in SAP?

SAP offers a variety of tools to maintain exchange rates on an on-going basis. The tools include:

- Exchange Rate Spreads
- Base Currency
- Inversion

Use the SAP supplied program, **RFTBFF00**, for populating the exchange rate table automatically from an input file in a multi-cash format from a commercially available input file.

## 131. What is known as an ‘Exchange Rate Spread’?

The difference between the ‘bank-buying rate’ and the ‘bank selling rate’ is known as the ‘**Exchange Rate Spread,**’ which remains almost constant. When you maintain

the exchange rate spread, it is sufficient if you maintain the **‘average rate’** for that currency in question in the system as you will be able to deduce the buying/selling rate by adding/subtracting the spread to/from the average rate.

### **132. Explain the use of ‘Direct’ or ‘Indirect Quotations.’**

It is possible to maintain the exchange rates, in SAP, by either of these two methods. What determines the use of a particular type of quotation is the business transaction or the market standard (of that country).

SAP adopts two prefixes to differentiate direct and indirect quotes during entering/displaying a transaction:

- ‘ ’—Blank, no prefix. Used in Direct Quotation
- ‘/’—Used in Indirect Quotation

When there is no prefix entered, (blank), the quotation is construed as the ‘direct quote’ by the system. Possible scenarios include:

- The company in question is mainly using the **‘Indirect Quotation.’**

Use ‘ ’ (blank) as the prefix for default notation for indirect quotation. Use ‘\*’ as the prefix for the rarely used direct quotation. If someone tries entering a transaction using direct quotation, but without the ‘\*’ in the exchange rate input field, the system will issue a warning.

- The company in question is mainly using the **‘Direct Quotation.’**

You do not need any specific settings as the default is the ‘ ’ (blank) prefix for the direct quotation, and ‘/’ for the indirect quotation. So, unless you make a transaction entry with ‘/’ prefix, the system takes all the entries as that of direct quotation.

- There could be instances where you are required to configure in such a way that a prefix is mandatory irrespective of the type of quotation. In this case, define the direct quotation prefix as ‘\*’, and the indirect one as the system



default ‘/’ prefix. This necessitates a prefix each of the entries either by ‘\*’ or ‘/.’ Otherwise, the user will get a warning to correct the entry.

### **133. Explain how ‘Taxes’ are Handled in SAP.**

SAP takes care of tax calculation, tax postings, tax adjustments, and tax reporting through the three FI components; namely GL, AP, and AR. The processing of the following kinds of taxes is possible:

1. Tax on Sales and Purchases
  - a. Input Taxes (Purchase Tax)
  - b. Output Taxes (Sales Tax)
2. Additional Taxes (these are country specific and in addition to the tax on sales and purchases)
3. Sales Tax
4. Withholding Tax
  - a. Classic Withholding Tax
  - b. Extended Withholding Tax

SAP allows taxation at three levels:

1. National level or federal level (Europe, South Africa, Australia, etc.)
2. Regional or jurisdiction level (USA)
3. National and Regional level (India, Canada, Brazil etc.)

### **134. How is Tax Calculated in SAP?**

SAP uses a technique called ‘**Condition Method**’ to calculate taxes (except Withholding Tax) in the system. The system makes use of ‘**Tax (Calculation) Procedures**’ defined in the system together with the **Tax Codes** for calculating the quantity of tax.

1. The **Tax Code** is the starting point in the tax calculation. The tax code is country specific, with every country having a country specific Tax Procedure defined in the standard system, which is used as the template for defining various tax codes. The system uses the tax code to verify the following:

The screenshot shows the SAP configuration screen for a Condition Type (Tax Processing). The screen is divided into several sections:

- Control data 1:** Contains fields for Cond. class (D Taxes), Calculat. type (A Percentage), Cond. category (D Tax), Rounding rule (Commercial), and StrucCond. (empty). There is also a Plus/minus button.
- Group condition:** Contains checkboxes for Group cond. and RoundDiffComp, and a GrpCond. routine field.
- Changes which can be made:** Contains checkboxes for Manual entries (No limitations), Header cond., Item condition, Delete, Amount/percent, Value, and Qty relation.
- Master data:** Contains fields for valid from (Today's date), valid to (31.12.9999), RefConType, RefApplicatio, PricingProc, delete fr. DB, Do not delete (set the), and Condition index.

Figure 27: Condition Type (Tax Processing)

- a. Tax type
  - b. Amount of tax calculated/entered
  - c. GL account for tax posting
  - d. Calculation of additional tax portion, if any
2. **Tax Rates** are defined for each of the tax codes. The tax rates are then associated with **Tax Types**, which are included in the tax procedures. (Because of this relationship, it is technically possible that a single tax code can have multiple tax rates for various tax types.)
  3. The tax code is assigned to a **Tax Procedure**, which is tagged to a GL master record. A particular tax procedure is accessed whenever that GL account is used in document processing.

Procedure			TAXB		Sales Tax - Belgium						
Control Data											
Reference Step Overview											
	Step	Cou	CTyp	Description	Fr	To	Man	Re	Stat	P	SuT
	100	B	BASB	Base Amount			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
	110	B	MMAS	Output Tax	100		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
	120	B	MMVS	Input Tax	100		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
	130	B	MMVN	Non-deduct. Input Tax	100		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
	140	B	MMVZ	Non-deduct. Input Tax	100		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
	150	B	MMAL	Sumptuary Tax	100		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
	160	B	MMAA	Clearing Tax	110		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
	170	B	NLXA	Acqu. Tax Outgoing	100		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
	180	B	NLXV	Acquisition Tax Deb.	100		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
	190	B	NLXN	Non-deduct. Input Tax	170		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
	200	B	NLNA	Non-deduct. Input Tax	170		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		

Figure 28: Steps in Tax processing

A Tax Procedure contains the following:

- **Steps**— To determine the sequence of lines within the procedure.
- **Condition Types**— Indicates how the tax calculation model will work (whether the records are for fixed amount or percentages and whether the records can be processed automatically, etc.)
- **Reference Steps**— Where the system obtains the amount/value it uses in its calculation (for example, the base amount)
- **Account/Process Keys**— Provide the link between the tax procedure and the GL accounts to which tax data is posted. This helps in automatic tax account assignments. To enable that these keys have the necessary information for automatic assignment, you need to define the following:
  - **Posting keys** (unless you have a specific requirement, it will be sufficient to use the GL posting keys: Debit: 40, Credit: 50)
  - **Rules** to determine on which fields the account determination is to be based (such as the tax code or country key)
  - **Tax accounts** to which the postings need to be made

SAP comes with a number of predefined account/process keys, and it is recommended that the standard keys be used.

4. The **Access Sequence** helps in identifying the sequence of Condition Tables to be used and identifying which field contents are the '*criteria*' for reading the **Condition Tables** (a group of Condition Types).
5. The tax amount so calculated is normally posted to the same side as the GL posting that contains the tax code. When exchange rate differences occur (due to tax adjustments in foreign currencies) these differences are generally posted to the specific account(s) for exchange rate differences. However, it is possible to specify (per Company Code) that the exchange rates for tax items can also be entered manually or determined by the posting or the document date, and the resulting differences posted to a special account.



Figure 29: Account/Process Key for tax processing

6. R/3 has a number of predefined account keys, and it is recommended that the standard keys be used.

### **135. Explain the Configurations Required for Taxes in SAP.**

You need to define the following to customize SAP for this purpose:

1. **Base Amount for Tax Calculation**

For each Company Code you need to define whether the **Base Amount** includes the cash discount as well. If the base amount includes the discount, then the tax base is called '**Gross,**' otherwise, it is '**Net.**' You may also define a similar base amount for calculating the '**Cash Discount.**' This also has to be maintained for each of the Company Codes.

## 2. **Tax Codes**

The **Tax Code** is a 2-digit code specifying the percentage of tax to be calculated on the base amount. While defining the tax code, you will also specify the '**Tax Type**' to classify a tax code relating to either '**Input Tax**' or '**Output Tax.**' The tax types are country specific and determine how a tax is calculated and posted.

## 3. **Tax Rate**

The **Tax Rate** is the percentage of tax to be calculated on a base amount. You will be able to define tax rates for one or more tax types when you define a single tax code.

## 4. **Check Indicators**

By using the check indicators, you configure the system to issue **Error/Warning Messages** when the tax amount entered manually is incorrect.

# **136. What is a (Tax) 'Jurisdiction Code'?**

A '**Jurisdiction Code,**' used in countries such as the United States, is a combination of the codes defined by tax authorities. It is possible to define up to four tax levels below the federal level. The four levels can be the:

- Sub-city level
- City level
- Country level
- State level

Before you can use the jurisdiction codes for tax calculation, you need to define the following:

1. Access Sequence (to include the country/tax code/jurisdiction fields)
2. Condition Types (which references the access sequence as defined above)
3. Jurisdiction Codes

The tax rates are defined in the tax code by jurisdiction. When posting taxes with a jurisdiction code, note that the taxes may be entered per jurisdiction code or per tax level.

### **137. Tell me about the ‘Tax Reports’ in SAP.**

SAP comes delivered with country-specific default ‘**Tax Reports**’ to meet your tax-reporting requirements. However, it is not uncommon to use third-party software for the same purpose. As a process, it is recommended that the ‘closing operations’ are completed before running the tax reports. This will ensure that the system makes relevant adjustment entries (between payables and receivables, exchange rate differences, etc.) so that the correct tax amounts are reported.

### **138. How is ‘Master Data’ different from ‘Transaction Data’?**

There are three kinds of data residing in any SAP system:

1. Table Data
2. Transaction Data
3. Master Data

**Table Data** refers to the customized information for a particular Client. This includes data such as payment terms, discounts, pricing, tolerance limits, etc., which you do not normally change on a day-to-day basis.

**Transaction Data** is the day-to-day recording of business information such as purchase orders, sales returns, invoices, payments, collections, etc. This includes both

system-generated data (tax, discount, etc., automatically calculated by the system during document posting) as well as user-generated data.

**Master Data** is the control information required to decide how transaction data gets posted into various accounts (such as customers, vendors, GL, etc.). The master data is usually shared across modules (for example, customer master records are common both to FI and SD in SAP) obviating the need for defining it in various application areas. The master data remains in the system for fairly a long period.

In the case of GL Master Records, the data is created in two areas:

1. **Chart of Accounts Area** (common to all Company Codes: Chart of accounts, GL account number, account name (short and long text), B/S or P&L indicator, account group, etc.).
2. **Company Code Area** (specific to that particular Company Code: Company Code, tax code, currency, open item management, line item display, sort key, etc.).

In the case of the **Customer/Vendor Master Record**, the data is created in two areas:

1. **Client Specific** (general data such as account number, name, telephone, bank information, etc., which is common to all the Company Codes using this master).
2. **Company Code Specific** (valid only for the Company Code, this includes: terms of payment, dunning procedure, reconciliation account, sort key, sales area, purchasing information, etc.).

### **139. Can You Post an A/C Document if the 'Credit' is not Equal to the 'Debit'?**

In general, unless the 'debits' equal the 'credits' in a document, you will not be able to post the document. However, the system allows you to post some of the documents, even if this not true, which includes the following:

- **Noted items:** this will contain only a debit or credit. Since there is no updating of accounting entries, the system will allow you to go ahead with the posting of these items.

### **140. What is a 'Document' in SAP?**

SAP is based on the '**document principle**' meaning that a document is created out of every business transaction in the system. The **Document** is the result of a posting in accounting in SAP, and is the connecting link between various business operations. There are two types of documents:

1. **Original Documents:** these documents relate to the origin of business transactions such as invoices, receipts, statement of accounts from bank, etc.
2. **Processing Documents:** These include '**accounting documents**' generated from postings in the system, '**reference documents,**' '**sample documents,**' etc. The processing documents other than the accounting ones are also known as '**special documents**' and they aid in the simplification of document entry in the system.

Every document consists of:

- A Document Header
- Two or more Line Items

Before attempting to enter a document, call up the relevant document entry function as the system provides a variety of ready-made document entry templates suited to different transactions such as regular GL entry, customer invoice posting, etc. The



details entered in a document can be simulated and displayed before the document is actually posted in the system. You may also choose to ‘park’ the document and post it later.

### **141. What is a ‘Document Header’?**

The ‘**Document Header**’ contains information that is valid for the whole document such as:

- Document Date
- Document Type (Control Information)
- Document Number
- Posting Date
- Posting Period
- Company Code

Besides the above, the document header also has information (editable, later on) such as *(a)* trading partner, *(b)* document header text, *(c)* reference, *(d)* cross-Company Code number, etc.

### **142. What is a ‘Document Type’?**

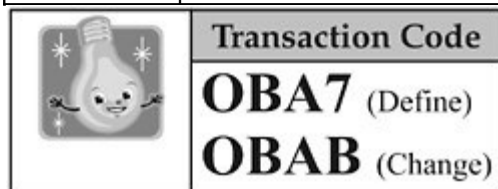
SAP comes delivered with a number of ‘**Document Types**,’ which are used in various postings. The document type helps to classify an accounting transaction within the system, and is used to control the entire transaction and determine the account types a particular document type can post to. For example, the document type ‘**AB**’ allows you to post to all the accounts, whereas type ‘**DZ**’ allows you to post only the customer payments. Every document type is assigned a number range.

The common document types include:



[Open table as spreadsheet](#)

Doc. Type	Description	Doc. Type	Description
AA	Asset posting	KG	Vendor credit memo
AB	Accounting document	KN	Net vendors
AF	Depreciation postings	KR	Vendor invoice
DG	Customer credit memo	KZ	Vendor payment
DR	Customer invoice	KG	Vendor credit memo
DZ	Customer payment	SA	GL account document
X1	Recurring entry doc.	X2	Sample document



### 143. How is 'Account Type' Connected to 'Document Type'?

The '**Document Type**' is characterized by a 2-character code such as AA, DG, etc., whereas an '**Account Type**' is denoted by a 1-character code such as A, D, etc., specifying which accounts a particular document can be posted to. The common account types include:

- **A** Assets
- **D** Customer (Debtor)
- **K** Vendor (Creditor)
- **M** Materials
- **S** GL

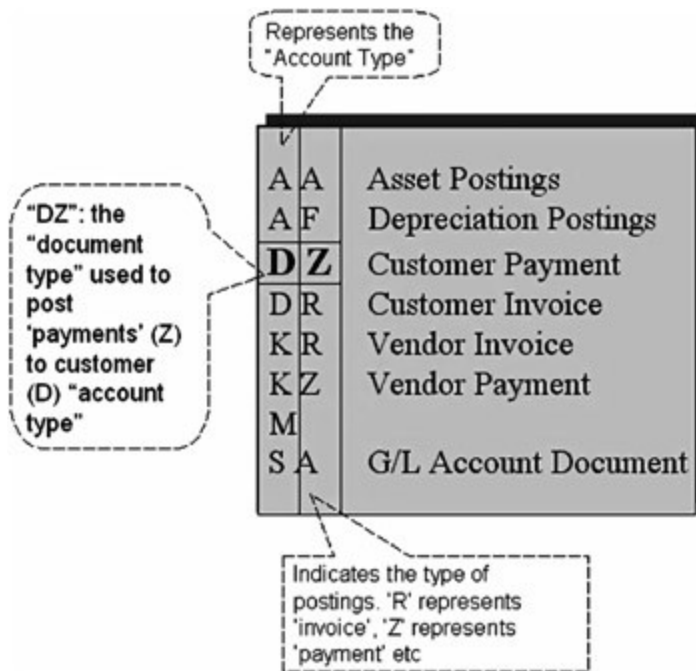


Figure 30: Document and Account Types

#### 144. What do You mean by 'Net' Postings'?

Usually, when a transaction is posted, for example, a vendor invoice (document type: KR), the system posts the 'Gross' amount with the 'tax' and 'discount' included. However, SAP provides you the option of posting these items as 'Net.' In this case, the posting excludes 'tax' or 'discounts.' Remember to use the special document type **KN**. (Similarly, you will use the document type **DN** for 'customer invoice-Net' compared to the normal invoice postings for the customer using the document type **DR**.) For using this 'net method' of posting you should have activated the required settings in the customization.

#### 145. Explain the Various 'Reference Methods.'

SAP recommends 'Reference Methods' as a 'document entry tool' to facilitate faster and easier document entry into the system, when you are required to enter the same data time and again. Besides making the document entry process less time-consuming, this also helps in error-free document entry.

The various Reference Methods used in SAP include:

1. Reference Documents
2. Account Assignment Models
3. Sample Documents

#### **146. What is the 'Document Change Rule'?**

The functionality '**Document Change Rules**' configured in the system maintains the information relating to 'what fields can be changed?' and 'under what circumstances?.' As you are already aware, SAP's document principle does not allow changing the 'relevant' fields once a document is posted; any changes can only be achieved through 'Reversal' or additional postings. Fields such as company code, business area, account number, posting key, amount, currency, etc., can never be changed once the document is posted. However, SAP allows changing some of the fields in the line items such as payment method, payment block, house bank, dunning level, dunning block, etc. These can be changed document by document or by using '**mass change**' for a number of documents in a single step.

The changes to 'master data' are tracked and stored per user for an 'audit trail.'

#### **147. Differentiate between 'Account Assignment Model,' 'Recurring Entries,' and 'Sample Document,'**

'**Account Assignment Model**' is a 'reference method' used in document entry when the same distribution of amounts to several Company Codes, cost centers, accounts, etc., is frequently used. Instead of manually distributing the amount among accounts or Company Codes, you may use equivalence numbers for distributing both the credit and debit amounts. A cross-Company Code account assignment model can also be created.

The account assignment model may contain any number of GL accounts. The GL account items need not be complete. The model can be used across several Company Codes, and can even include Company Codes from non-SAP systems.

Acct assignm model/UTILITY22									
Utility Payments model					Company code		1000		
Currency					EUR				
Debit distribution					5,000.00		Credit distribution		5,000.00
Account assignment model items									
PK	CoCd	GL acct	Tx	Jurisdiction code	BA	Cost ctr	Amount	Equip	
40	1000	416100	V0		9900	1000	1,000.00	20	
40	1000	416100	V0		9900	2100	1,500.00	30	
40	1000	416100	V0		9900	2100	2,500.00	50	
50	1000	113105			9900		5,000.00	100	

Figure 31: Account Assignment Model

- You can use the account assignment model while ‘parking’ a document (but you cannot use a ‘reference document’ for ‘parking’).
- The use of account assignment models is limited to GL accounts.

Unlike a ‘**Sample Document,**’ an account assignment model may be incomplete and can be completed during document entry by adding or deleting or changing the data already saved in the model.



The ‘**Recurring Entry**’ original document is used by the system as a ‘reference document’ for enabling posting of periodically recurring postings such as loan repayments, insurance premium payments, rent, etc. Since this document is not an accounting document, the account balances are not affected. In a recurring entry original document, you will not be able to change the (a) posting key, (b) account, and (c) amount. The **recurring entry documents** are defined with a special number

range **(X1)**. Unlike an account assignment model, these documents cannot be used for cross-Company Code postings.

The **recurring entry document** does not update transaction figures, per se, but acts only as a reference and as the basis for creating accounting documents. The SAP program **SAPF120** creates the accounting documents from the recurring entry original document. There are two ways to set the exact date when this document should be posted to:

- **Posting frequency:** enter the day of the month and the period (in months) between two postings.
- **Scheduled run:** configure the 'run schedule' specifying the calendar days on which the program should post these documents.

A **Sample Document** is like a template, which is created and stored so that the information contained therein can be easily copied into new documents and posted in the system. But once a sample document is created note that you will not be able to change the 'line items' already contained in that document; all you can do is change the amounts in that sample document. But you can overcome this by defining a new sample document that can contain other line items or you may add new line items to the FI document, which is created by copying from the original sample document.

Sample documents have separate number ranges **(X2)**.

## **148. What is a 'Line Item'?**

The **'Line Items'** contain information relating to account number, amount, debit/credit, tax code, amount, etc. SAP allows a maximum of 999 line items in a single document. Besides the one entered by you during an document entry, the system may also create its own line items called **'system generated line items,'** such as tax deductions, etc. Irrespective of the number of line items entered, ensure that the total of these is always zero (that is, total debits should equal total credits). Otherwise, the system will not allow you to post the document.

## 149. What is a 'Posting Key'?

A **'Posting Key'** in SAP is a 2-digit alphanumeric key that controls the entry of line items. SAP comes with many posting keys for meeting the different business transaction requirements: **40** (GL debit), **50** (GL credit), **01** (customer invoice), **11** (customer credit memo), **21** (vendor credit memo), **31** (vendor payment), etc.

The posting key determines:

1. What account can be posted to
2. Which side of the account (debit or credit) to be posted to, and
3. What 'layout' screen needs to be used for that particular transaction.



It is a normal practice not to change any of the default posting keys in the system, as you would very rarely require additional posting keys.

## 150. Differentiate between the 'Parking' and the 'Holding' of Documents.


The **'Parking of a Document'** in SAP is one of the two **preliminary postings** (the other being the 'Holding' of documents) in the system and refers to the storing of incomplete documents in the system. These documents can later be called on for completion and posting. While 'parking' a document, the system does not carry out the mandatory 'validity checking.' The system does not also carry out any automatic postings (such as creating tax line items) or 'balance checks.' As a result, the transaction figures (account balances) are not updated. This is true in the case of all financial transactions except in the area of **TR-CM (Cash management)** where 'parked' documents will update the transactions.

The parking of documents can be used to ‘park’ data relating to customers, vendors, or assets (acquisition only). When a cross-Company Code document is ‘parked,’ only one document is created in the initial Company Code; when this ‘parked’ document is posted all other documents relevant for all other Company Codes will also be created. However, it is to be noted that **substitution** functionality cannot be used with document ‘parking,’ as substitution is activated only on transaction processing.

The added advantage is that a document ‘parked’ by an accounting clerk can be called on for completion by someone else. The ‘parked’ documents can be displayed individually or as a list from where the required document can be selected for completion and posting. The number of the ‘parked’ document is transferred to the posted document. The original ‘parked’ document, if necessary, can be displayed even after it has been posted to.

During a transaction when you do not have a piece of required information, you can **‘Hold the Document’** and complete it later. As in the case of ‘parked’ documents, here also the document does not update the transaction figures.

The essential difference between these two types of preliminary postings can be summarized as follows:

 Open table as spreadsheet

Attribute	‘Park’ document	‘Hold’ document
View the document in ‘Account Display’?	Yes	No
Changes to the document?	Any user can access, view, and/change the document	No other user, except the creator, will be able to access, view, and/change the document
Document number?	System assigned	Manually entered by the user
Use of data in the	Possible	Not possible



Attribute	‘Park’ document	‘Hold’ document
document for evaluation purposes?		

## 151. What is an ‘Automatic Posting’?

When you post documents in SAP, there are instances where the system also adds some more line items (such as tax, cash discount, gain/loss from foreign exchange transactions, etc.) besides the ones you have entered in the document. This helps to reduce your work as the system calculates these automatically. However, you need to define accounts you want the system to automatically post to; this will ensure that no manual posting is allowed to any of these accounts.

## 152. What is ‘Clearing’?

‘**Clearing**’ in SAP refers to squaring-off open debit entries with that of open credit entries. Clearing is allowed in GL accounts maintained on an ‘open item’ basis and in all customer/vendor accounts. The clearing can either be manual or automatic. In the case of **manual clearing**, you will view the open items and select the matching items for clearing. In the case of **automatic clearing**, a program determines what items need to be cleared based on certain pre-determined open item selection criteria and proposes assignments before clearing these assigned items. Whatever the type of clearing, the system creates a **clearing document** with the details and enters the ‘clearing number’ against each of the cleared open items. The **clearing number** is derived from the document number of the clearing document.

You will also be able to do a ‘**partial clearing**’ when you are unable to match open items exactly; in this case, the balance amount not cleared is posted as a new open item. You may also configure **clearing tolerance** and also define rules on how to tackle the situation where the net amount after clearing is not zero (such as, writing off, posting the difference to a separate ‘clearing difference’ account, etc.).

In the case of customers who are also vendors, you will be able to clear between these two provided it is duly configured in the relevant master data (by entering the customer number in the vendor master record and the vendor number in the customer master record).

### **153. Explain 'Reversal of Documents' in SAP.**

If you need to change some of the accounting information relating to an already posted document, you can only achieve this by '**Reversing**' the original document and posting a new one with the correct information. However, reversal is possible only when:

- The origin of the document is in FI (not through SD or MM, etc.)
- The information such as business area, cost center, etc., is still valid (that you have not deleted these business objects)
- The original document has no cleared items
- The document relates only to the line items of customer/vendor/GL

While reversing, the system automatically selects the appropriate document type for the reversal, and defaults the relevant posting keys. (Remember that the document type for the **reversal document** would have already been configured when the document type was defined in the configuration.) Also note that if you do not specify the posting date for the reversal document, the system defaults to the posting date of the original document.

### **154. Explain 'True Reversal,' How is it different from regular 'Reversal'?**

As you are aware, any reversal results in opposite postings to the credit/debit sides of the original posting, leading to an increase in the account balances and the 'trial balance' is automatically inflated on both the sides. This is against the law in some countries such as France where it is required that even after reversal, there should not

be an increased account balance. As a result, SAP came out with ‘**True Reversal**’ which overcomes this problem by ‘**negative postings**’ to the same line item(s) during reversal. The account balance, which was originally increased, is restored to the actual balance during the reversal:

➡ Open table as spreadsheet

Type of <u>Reversal</u>	Type of <u>Posting</u>	Account 100000		Account 200000	
		Debit	Credit	Debit	Credit
Traditional Reversal	Original Posting	\$2500			\$2500
	Reversal		\$2500	\$2500	
‘True’ Reversal	Original Posting	\$2500			\$2500
	Reversal	–\$2500			–\$2500

## 155. What is ‘Fast Entry’?

Instead of the regular document entry screens, SAP provides ‘**Fast Entry**’ screens for facilitating a quick way of entering repetitive line items in a transaction. For achieving this, you need to define a **Fast Entry Screen Layout**, which will specify what fields you will require for data entry, and in what order. You may configure these fast entry screen layouts for GL account line items, credit memos, and customer/vendor invoices. Each of these fast entry screen layouts will be denoted by a 5-character screen variant in the system. Fast entry screens are used in **complex (general) postings**.

SAP’s **enjoy postings** are also meant for similar data entry screens, but the difference is that in the case of ‘fast entry’ you will start from scratch when identifying the fields, positioning them in the line item, etc., whereas in enjoy postings, the system comes with all the fields activated and you will select the fields that you do not want to be made available for data entry.

## 156. How do You Create 'GL Account Master Data'?

'GL Account Master Data' can be created using any one of the following methods:

1. Manually
2. Creating with reference
3. Through Data Transfer Workbench
4. Copying from existing GL accounts

The **Manual Creation** of GL account master records is both laborious and time consuming. You will resort to this only when you can't create master records using any of the other methods listed above.

You will follow the second method, **Creating With Reference**, when you are already in SAP and have an existing Company Code (Reference Company Code) from which you can copy these records to a new Company Code (Target Company Code). You will be able to do this by accessing the Menu: 'General Ledger Accounting>GL Accounts>Master Data>GL Account Creation> Create GL Accounts with Reference.' While doing this, you can copy the '**account assignments**' as well ensuring that the integration of GL with other applications is intact. SAP facilitates so that you can *(i)* limit the number of GL records thus copied to the target Company Code, *(if)* create new records if necessary, and *(iii)* change the account number/name.

When your GL accounts are in a non-SAP system and you feel that these accounts will meet your requirements you will then use the '**Data Transfer Workbench**' of SAP to transfer these records into SAP, and change them to suit the SAP environment. Since this will not have 'Account Assignment' logic as defined in SAP, you need to be careful when defining these assignments.

You will resort to the last option of **Copying from Existing GL Accounts** only when you feel that there is a Chart of Accounts in the system that meets your requirements 100%. Otherwise, follow the second method described above.

## 157. What is 'Collective Processing' of GL Accounts?

'Collective Processing' helps you to make systematic changes to a number of GL accounts in a single step. For example, you have used the 'creating with reference' method to create GL accounts in a new Company Code and you want to change the account names as well as the 'GL account type' (P&L or B/S). Then you will use the **mass processing method**. You can make changes to:

1. Chart of accounts data
2. Company Code data

Use Menu Path: 'Accounting>Financial accounting>General ledger accounting>Master records>Collective processing.' This can be achieved in IMG through: 'Financial Accounting>General Ledger Accounting>GL Accounts> Master Data>GL Account Creation>Change GL Accounts Collectively.'

Remember that the 'collective processing' helps only to edit and you cannot use this method if you need to create new master records.

## 158. What is 'Individual Processing' of GL Accounts?

In contrast to the 'collective processing' of GL accounts where you edit a number of accounts in a single step, **Individual Processing** helps to edit or create GL account master records one at a time. Here you can edit (including display, change, block, unblock, and delete) or create a new GL account in three different ways:

1. **Centrally:** You will be editing or creating a GL account master record in both the Chart of Accounts area and Company Code area in one step. This is also known as '**one-Step**' GL creation.



2. **In the Chart of Accounts area:** you first edit or create the record here before doing it in the Company Code area.



3. **In the Company Code area:** you edit or create the record here after it has been done in the Chart of Accounts area.



Put together, steps 2 and 3 relate to the ‘step-by-step’ creation of GL account master records.

### **159. Is it Possible to Change an Existing B/S GL A/C to the P&L Type?**

Technically, you will be able to change all the fields, except the account number, of a GL account in the Chart of Accounts area. However, in this particular instance when you change the ‘GL account type’ from ‘B/S’ to ‘P&L,’ make sure that you again run the ‘balance carry-forward’ program after saving the changes so that the system corrects the account balances suitably.

### **160. Why doesn’t the System allow You to Change the ‘Tax Category’ in a GL A/C Master?**

You will be able to change the ‘Company Code’ related fields such as tax category, currency, etc., provided that there has not been any posting to these accounts. Pay attention to the following:

1. If you need to denote an existing GL account to later be managed on an ‘open item basis’ or vice versa, then make sure that the account balance is zero in either case.
2. If you are trying to change an existing ‘reconciliation account’ (to a regular GL), then make sure that the account has not been posted to.
3. If you are attempting to denote an existing ordinary GL account into a ‘reconciliation account,’ ensure that the account has a zero balance.

## **161. What is an ‘Account Group’?**

The ‘**Account Group**’ (or **GL Account Group**), a 4-character alphanumeric key, controls how the GL account master records are created in the system. This helps to ‘group’ GL accounts according to the ‘functional areas’ to which they must belong. Account group is mandatory for creating a master record. The same account groups can be used by more than one more Company Code if they all use the same Chart of Accounts. Each GL account is assigned to only one account group.

The Account Group determines:

1. The **number interval** that is to be used while creating the master record.
2. The **screen layout** that is to be used while creating the master record in the Company Code area.

While defining the account groups in the system, you also need to define the corresponding field status for each of these groups. Otherwise, you will not be able to see any fields as all these would be hidden by default.

SAP comes delivered with a number of ‘account groups’ such as:

- **SAKO** (GL accounts general)
- **MAT.** (Materials Management accounts)
- **FIN.** (Liquid Funds accounts)

INT	MA60	AR60/Materials manag.accounts	10000000	10999999
INT	MAT	Materials management accounts		99999999
INT	MAT .	Materials management accounts		99999999
INT	PL	P&L accounts		99999999
INT	PL60	AR60/income statement accounts	15000000	15999999
INT	RECN	Recon.account ready for input		99999999
INT	SA60	AR60/General G/L accounts	10000000	15999999
INT	SAK0	General G/L accounts		99999999

Figure 32: GL Account Group



In most situations, you will not require additional groups other than the ones already available in the standard system. However, if you need to create a new one, it is easier to copy an existing one and make modifications to it instead of creating one from scratch.

## 162. Describe ‘Number Range Interval.’

A ‘Number Range’ refers to a number interval defined in the system so that when documents are posted, the system assigns a number from this range. You will define different number ranges for different document types. Each document in SAP is uniquely identified by the combination of *(a)* document number, *(b)* company code, and *(c)* fiscal year.

The number range for a document type can be defined:

1. Per fiscal year or
2. Until a fiscal year in future.

If defined to last only one fiscal year, then the number range needs to be defined every year. When number ranges are defined every year, the system starts from the first number in the range for that particular year, which helps to prevent reaching the upper limit too fast.



NR Object

Accounting document

Subobject

0001

Intervals

	No	Year	From number	To number	Current number	Ext
<input type="checkbox"/>	01	1993	0100000000	0199999999	0	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	01	1999	0100000000	0199999999	100000001	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	01	2007	0100000000	0199999999	0	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	01	9999	0100000000	0199999999	100000569	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	02	1992	0200000000	0299999999		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	02	1993	0200000000	0299999999		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	02	1999	0200000000	0299999999		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	02	2007	0020000000	0029999999	0	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	02	9999	0200000000	0299999999	0	<input type="checkbox"/>

Figure 33: Document Number Range

If you specify the fiscal year as ‘9999,’ then the document number range is valid forever (well, almost!) and you do not have to do this exercise of maintaining number ranges every fiscal year. But every year the system starts from the last number used up in the previous year and if a small number range is defined for a document type, you could easily run out of the number range fast.

The document numbers can either be:

1. **Internally** assigned by the system or
2. **Externally** input when the same is created.

The number ranges can be defined in such a way that the system generates the number automatically when a document is created. This is known as ‘**internal number assignment.**’ Under this, the system stores the ‘last number’ used for a document in the ‘Current Number’ field and will bring up the next number when another document is created.

If ‘**external numbering**’ is used, the user needs to input a document number every time a document is created in the system. Since the user supplies the number every


time, the subsequent numbering may not be sequential. Unlike an internal numbering, the system does not store the ‘last number’ in the ‘Current Number’ field.

The numbers in a number range can either be **numeric** or **alphanumeric**. If numbers are numeric, the system will prefix the number with the required zeros to make the number length uniform at 10 digits. If you are using alphanumeric numbering, then the number is padded with zeros from the right. If you are following ‘year-specific’ numbering, it is better not to mix numeric and alphanumeric numbering for a particular document type in various fiscal years.

The system creates a minimum of one document when a transaction is created/completed. SAP recommends ‘filing’ original documents (under the number of the processing document (the document generated in SAP)). The best practice is to enter the (external) number of the ‘original document’ in the ‘Reference’ field of the document created in the SAP system. For easy cross-reference, the SAP document number thus created needs to be noted on the ‘original document.’

The following are the activities you need to complete for configuring the number ranges properly in the system:

1. Defining the number ranges
2. Copying the number ranges to Company Code(s)
3. Copying the number ranges to fiscal year(s)

	Transaction Code
	<b>FBN1</b> (Define number ranges)
	<b>OABH1</b> (Copy to Company Code)
	<b>OABH2</b> (Copy to fiscal year)

## 163. What is a 'Screen Layout'?

The 'account group' determines which '**Screen Layout**' should be used while creating a GL account master record. For each of the account groups, you can define different screen layouts, which essentially determine the '**Field Status**' of a field.

The field status refers to whether the field is:

1. **Suppressed** (field is invisible, hidden from display)
2. **Required** (display on, entry mandatory)
3. **Optional** (display on, entry not mandatory)

	Suppress	Req. Entry	Opt. Entry
Due date	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Value date	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
Payment terms	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Cash discount deduction	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Own Bank	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
Bank Business Partners	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>

Figure 34: Field Status

All the above three are shown as 'radio buttons' against each of the fields in the screen layout, and you should select any one to set the status to that field; by default all the fields are 'suppressed.'

There are two levels of controls of field status:

1. Field status at the account group level
2. Field status at the activity (create/change/display) level (i.e., at the transaction level).

You may also have the field status defined for posting keys (40-debit and 50-credit for the GL account postings). Also remember to define the field status for 'reconciliation accounts' as you will not be able to define any such status in the sub ledger accounts (for example, customer or vendor).

SAP has built-in rules, called **link rules**, to link these two levels and to decide the final status of a field in the ‘screen layout.’ The link rules also help to overcome the field-status setting differences arising out of different settings at the Client level (field status for posting keys) and the Company Code level (field status settings at the account group level).

## 164. What is a ‘Field Status Group’?

The ‘field status’ of an individual field or a group of fields is marked in a **‘Field Status Group,’** which is then assigned to individual GL account master records. You may attach field status groups to a field status variant so that the **‘field status groups’** are used in various Company Codes.

Field status variant 0001 Field status for 0001	
Field status group	Text
0001	General (with text, allocation)
0003	Material consumption accounts
0004	Cost accounts
0005	Bank accounts (obligatory value date)
0006	Material accounts

Figure 35: Field Status Variant (FSV)

The Field Status Variant is named similar to the Company Code. For example, if your Company Code is 1000, the field status variant is also named 1000, and it is assigned to the Company Code.

Co...	Company Name	City	Fld stat.var.
BLUE	Blue Fish	New York	1000

Figure 36: Assign a FSV to Company Code

## 165. What do you mean by 'Balances in Local Currency' Only?

When you create GL account master records, it is necessary to decide whether you want an account to have the transactions updated only in local currency. You will set this indicator accordingly in the 'Company Code area' of the master record. Make sure to set this indicator for **clearing accounts** such as:

- Cash discount clearing accounts
- GR/IR clearing accounts

Note that you need to set this indicator 'on' for all the 'clearing accounts' where you use the local currency to clear the line items in various currencies so that the transactions are posted without posting any exchange rate difference that otherwise might arise.

**Example:** Consider an invoice for USD 1,000, which on that day translates into an amount of INR 45,000 with an exchange rate of 1 USD=INR 45. Imagine that when the goods are received, the exchange rate was 1 USD=INR 44.

- If the indicator is set, the system ignores the exchange rate as if the line items have been maintained only in the local currency (INR), and the items are cleared.
- If the indicator is NOT set, the system makes a posting for the 'exchange rate difference' (INR 1, 000) before clearing the two line items.

## 166. What is 'Line Item Display'?

To display line items of an account, you need to set the indicator '**Line Item Display**' to 'on' in that account's master record. This is mandatory for customer and vendor accounts. The line items can be displayed using the classical display or the SAP List Viewer (ALV). You can also use several '**display variants**' to display

various fields when you feel that the Standard Variant is not meeting your requirements.

### **167. What is 'Archiving'? How does it differ from 'Deletion'?**

'**Archiving**' refers to deleting data from the documents in the database and storing the data in a file, which can be transferred to an 'archiving system' later on. Archiving does not physically delete the documents. '**Deletion**' actually removes the documents from the database. To proceed with archiving and deletion you need to:

1. **Block** posting to these archived master records.
2. **Mark** (the master records) **for deletion**: Mark for deletion at the 'Chart of Accounts area' to delete the records from all the Company Codes. However, if you do not want to delete from all the Company Codes, but only from one or more Company Codes then do the same in the 'Company Code area' of the master record(s).
3. **Archive** all the transaction figures from the relevant documents.
4. Call up a special program to '**delete**' the records: The program will check whether that particular document could be deleted. If yes, it will proceed to 'archive' and then to 'deletion.'

### **168. Tell me the two uses of 'Blocking' an Account.**


You may use '**Blocking**' to:

1. Block an account from further postings.
2. Block the creation of the account itself (at the Company Code level or Chart of Accounts area).

### **169. How do You Configure the GL A/C for the 'House Bank'?**

A '**House Bank**' is defined using transaction code **FI12**. A '**bank key**' represents the bank. The house bank can contain several accounts; for each of these accounts you

need to maintain a GL account. The bank determination, for an automatic payment program, is configured using the Transaction Code **FBZP**.

	Transaction Code
	<b>FI12</b> (Define House Bank) <b>FBZP</b> (Automatic Payment Program configuration)

## 170. What is an ‘Intermediate Bank’?

‘**Intermediate Banks**’ are used in SAP in addition to the house banks and partner banks for making or receiving payments from business partners abroad. The payment processing, involving an intermediate bank, makes use of the ‘**bank chain,**’ which may consist of a house bank, a partner bank, and a maximum of intermediate banks.

## 171. Explain ‘Intercompany Postings.’

‘**Intercompany Postings**’ arise when a Company Code, for example, in a centralized procurement, pays for itself and on behalf of other Company Codes. When posted, the transaction results in three documents: (1) one for the paying Company Code (say, 1111) (2) one for the other Company Codes (say, 2222 and 4444), and (3) one for the intercompany transaction itself.

Before making intercompany transactions, you need to configure both ‘intercompany payables’ and ‘intercompany receivables.’ For each combination of these Company Codes, you will be required to maintain a ‘clearing account,’ which must be referenced in each of these Company Codes. You will also be able to configure whether you manually input the transaction number or allow the system to automatically assign the numbers. In the case of system-generated transaction numbers, this 16-digit number consists of (1) a 10-digit document number (1222222222) of the paying Company Code, followed by (2) 4 digits representing

this paying Company Code (1111), and (3) 2 digits representing the last two digits of the financial year (07) (for example, 1222222222111107).


## **172. How can you Manually ‘Clear’ ‘Open Items’? When?**

Under ‘**Manual Clearing**,’ you will select the open items, based on the incoming payment so that the selected ‘open items’ are ‘cleared’ (knocked-off). In cases like refunds from a vendor or transactions involving bank sub-accounts and clearing accounts, etc., you will use manual clearing. When cleared, the system flags these line items as ‘cleared,’ creates a **clearing document**, and enters the clearing document number and clearing date in these open items. Besides the clearing document, the system may also generate ‘additional documents’ in cases such as **partial** or **residual processing**, and for posting the loss/gain to the assigned GL account.

While doing this, if there is a **payment difference**, it can be treated the way it is configured in the system:

- If the difference is within the tolerance limit, defined in the system using the tolerance groups (defined at the Company Code level), the cash discount is adjusted or the system automatically posts the difference to a gain/loss GL account.
- When the payment difference exceeds the limits of defined tolerance, then the incoming amount may be processed as a partial payment (the original open item is not cleared, but the incoming payment is posted with a reference to that invoice) or the difference is posted as a residual item (the original open item is cleared and a new open item is created by the system for the difference amount) in the system.



	<b>Transaction Code</b> <b>F-28</b> (FI-AR) <b>F-06</b> (FI-GL)
---	---

You may also use the Menu Path: Accounting>Financial Accounting> Account Receivable>Document entry>Incoming payment>Post or Accounting >Financial Accounting>GL>Document entry>Incoming payment>Post

### **173. How do you Perform ‘Period Closing’ in SAP?**

You do a ‘(Period) Closing’ in SAP in three steps:

- Completing the Pre-closing activities
- Financial Closing
- Managerial Closing

### **174. What is ‘Pre-closing’?**

You need to ensure the following as part of the ‘**Pre-closing**’ activities:

1. Post all the Recurring Entries for expenses and accruals.
2. Ensure that all the interfaced programs have been run so that the required data have been transferred to the system.
3. Post all the depreciation, material receipts, invoices, salaries, etc. In short, ensure that all the transactions for the period in question have been duly recorded and posted into the system.

### **175. Explain ‘Financial Closing.’**

‘**Financial Closing**’ involves completing the following activities and taking out the financial statements for the period concerned:

1. **Revalue/Regroup:**

- **Revalue** Balance Sheet items managed in foreign currencies—use the report **RFSBEW00** to value GL Balance Sheet Accounts managed in a foreign currency. (The report generates a Batch Input session to post the revenue or expense resulting from any exchange rate differences.)
- Clear Receivables or Payables with the ‘exchange rate difference.’
- Value all the Open Items using the report **SAPF100**. This is used to value all the open receivables and payables, using the period-end exchange rates. Here also, the report generates a Batch Input session to post the entries resulting from any exchange rate differences.
- **Regroup** GR/IR using the program **RFWERE00** to allocate the net balance (depending on whether the balance is a net debit or credit) in the GR/IR Account to one of two GL Accounts (created to actually depict the net effect of the balance in the GR/IR Account).

## 2. **Ensure accounting accuracy:**

Use the program **SAPF190** to compare the totals created by the system in the (1) indexes (customers, vendors, and GL) and documents (customers, vendors, and GL) with that of the (2) account balances (customers, vendors, and GL) to ensure the transaction accuracy.

## 3. **Run required reports:**

Generate the **financial statements** (balance sheet and profit & loss account) using the **financial statement versions**. You may also generate the key figure/ ratio reports (use the GL account information system).

# 176. What is a ‘Financial Statement Version’?

A ‘**Financial Statement Version**’ helps to define the Financial Statements (both the **Balance Sheet** and **Profit & Loss statements**). When you copy the settings from an

existing Company Code to a new one, you will also be copying the financial statement version defined for the ‘source’ Company Code.

Fin.Stmt.version	Financial Statement Version Name
BAIT	Commercial balance sheet (Italy)
BAJP	Financial statement (Japan)
BAKR	Financial Statement (Korea)
BANK	Bank financial statements
BANL	Commercial balance sheet (Netherlands)
BANO	Commercial balance sheet (Norway)
BAPT	Commercial balance sheet (Portugal)
BAR2	Commercial balance sheet for Russian Fed. (Form 2)
BARU	Commercial balance sheet (Russia)
BASE	Commercial balance sheet for Sweden (BAS90)
BASG	Commercial balance sheet (Singapore)
BATW	Financial Statement Version (Taiwan)
BAUC	Commercial balance sheet (CANADA)
BAUS	Commercial balance sheet USA
BAZA	Commercial balance sheet (South Africa)
BICH	Commercial balance sheet (Switzerland)
BSUS	Commercial balance sheet USA

Figure 37: Financial Statement Versions

You may also define a new financial statement version and build the financial statements from scratch. You may create the financial statements both for external reporting (Company Code financial statements) and internal reporting (business area financial statements).

You may also create the balance sheets for a group of Company Codes using FI-SL (Special Purpose Ledgers). The financial statements may be defined to provide information from a period accounting point of view (GL account groups wise) or a cost of sales point of view (functional area financial statements).

All the above statements can be configured and defined to provide different levels of detail:

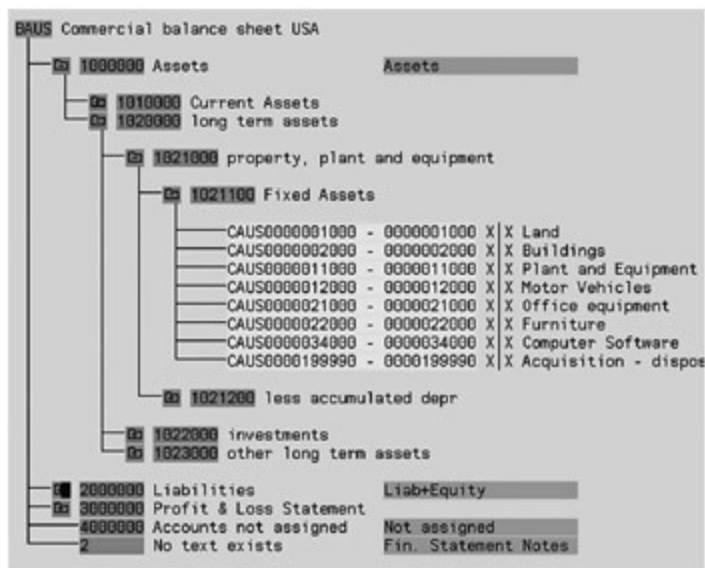


Figure 38: Financial Statement Version—BAUS

A financial statement version can have a maximum of 10 hierarchy levels, with each level assigned with an item (account category). As you go down the hierarchy, you define the account categories in more detail, with the lowest level being represented by the GL accounts. The system displays the relevant amount for each of these items.

## 177. What Items are required in a ‘Financial Statement Version’?

Irrespective of the details you require in a ‘Financial Statement Version,’ it is mandatory that you have, at least, the following items defined:

1. **Assets**
2. **Liabilities**
  - a. Net Result: Profit
  - b. Net Result: Loss
3. **P/L result** (during annual closing, when you run the program **RFBILA00**, the system calculates the profit or loss by subtracting the ‘total liabilities’ from ‘total assets’ and updates the relevant Net Result item—Profit or Loss).

4. **Not assigned** (posted amounts but not yet assigned to any of the account groups).

## **178. How do you ensure ‘Correct’ Balances in the ‘Financial Statement Version’?**

In order to have a balanced statement (Profit & Loss and Balance Sheet) you need to ensure that the accounts are correctly and completely assigned to the nodes of the **Financial Statement Version**. You may do this by resorting to the necessary assignments at the account balance level or node balance level.

At the **account balance level**, you need to ensure that the account is shown in two different nodes, but you will turn “ON” the ‘debit indicator’ of the account on one node and turn “ON” the ‘credit indicator’ on the other node. Imagine that you have a bank current account 10001000. When you turn “ON” the debit indicator, this account shows only the debit balances and is construed as the asset. On the other hand, when the credit indicator is turned “ON,” the balances on this node now indicate that you owe to the bank (overdraft).

You may also use the **node-level assignment**. In this case, the system uses the ‘debit/credit shift’ and shows only the ‘effective’ balance at the node and not at the individual account level.

## **179. How do you Perform ‘Annual Closing’ in SAP?**

‘**Annual Closing**’ is like any other ‘period closing’ and you will be performing all the activities that are required for a period-end-close. In addition to those activities, you will also:

- Carry forward Vendor and Customer accounts
- Carry forward the GL account balances of all the Balance Sheet items
- Close the Profit & Loss Accounts and carry forward the balance (profit or loss) to the retained earnings account(s)

For a GL account ‘carry forward,’ use the program **SAPF011**.

## **180. Explain ‘Managerial Closing.’**

In ‘**Managerial closing**’ you will:

- Do a preliminary Controlling period closing
- Settle/re-allocate costs across Controlling organization
- Draw and review internal reports
- Re-open the Controlling period
- Correct and adjust the accounting data, if required
- Reconcile FI and CO by running the FICO Reconciliation Ledger
- Run re-adjustment programs to ensure that the Business Areas and the Profit Centers are balanced
- Draw reports and analyze

## **181. What is the ‘New FI-GL’ in FI in ECC?**

The traditional or ‘**Classic FI-GL accounting**’ in FI has been focused on providing comprehensive external reporting by recording all business transactions in the system. However, to meet modern-day requirements, this has now been enhanced, called the ‘**New FI-GL**,’ and includes the following:

- **Parallel accounting:** Maintaining several parallel ledgers to meet different accounting principles.
- **Integrated legal and management reporting:** Unlike the traditional GL, the ‘New FI-GL’ enables you to perform internal management reporting along with legal reporting. So you are in a position to generate Financial Statements for any dimension (for example, profit center) in the business.
- **Segment reporting:** With the introduction of the Segment dimension, SAP now enables you to produce Segment Reports based on **IFRS (International**

**Financial Reporting Standards)** and the **GAPP (Generally Accepted Accounting Principles)** accounting principles.

- **Cost of sales accounting:** It is now possible to perform cost of sales accounting in the ‘New FI-GL.’

However, the following functions are not yet supported in the ‘New FI-GL’:

- Transfer Price
- SKF (Statistical Key Figure)
- Euro Translation
- AIS (Audit Information System)
- Archiving
- Data Retention Tool

The ‘New FI-GL’ needs to be activated in the system before you start using the IMG Menu Path :>Financial Accounting (New)->Financial Accounting Global Settings (New)/General Ledger Accounting (New).

In the standard system, the tables from ‘classic general ledger accounting’ (**GLT0**) are updated as well as the tables in ‘New FI-GL’ during the activation. This enables you to perform a ‘ledger comparison’ during the implementation of ‘New FI-GL’ to ensure that your ‘new GL accounting’ has the correct settings and is working correctly. To compare ledgers, in Customizing choose Financial Accounting Global Settings (New)->Tools->Compare Ledgers.

It is recommended that you ‘deactivate’ the update of tables for ‘classic GL accounting’ once you have established that ‘New FI-GL’ is working correctly. To do this, in Customizing choose Financial Accounting Global Settings (New)-> Tools->Deactivate ‘Update of Classic General Ledger.’

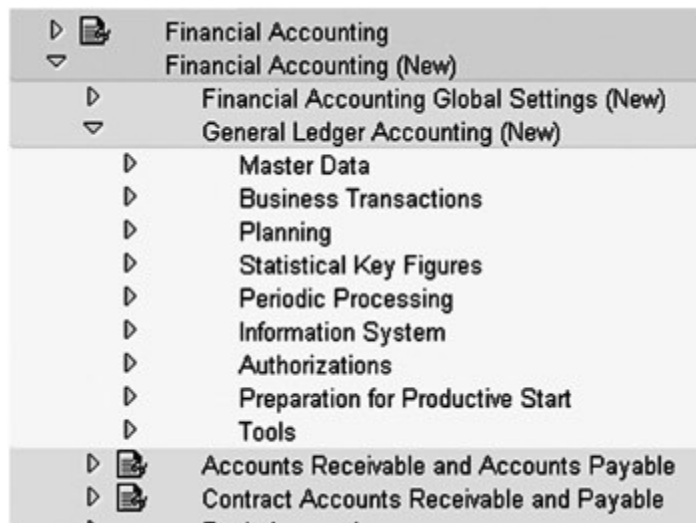


Figure 39: New FI-GL

## 182. Explain 'Customer/Vendor Master Records.'

There are three categories of data maintained in a typical master record for a customer:

- General Data
- Company Code Data
- Sales Area Data (for customers)/Purchasing Organization Data (for vendors)



Vendor	5800
Company Code	9000
Purch. Organization	9000

General data

☒ Address  
☒ Control  
☒ Payment transactions

Company code data

☒ Accounting info  
☒ Payment transactions  
☒ Correspondence  
☐ Withholding tax

Purchasing organization data

☒ Purchasing data  
☒ Partner functions

Figure 40: Vendor Master—Various Data

**General Data** includes general information such as account number, name, telephone, bank information, trading partner, vendor (if the customer is also a vendor), group key, bank key, bank account, alternate payee, etc., which are common to all the Company Codes using this master.

**Company Code Data** comprises terms of payment, payment methods, tolerance group, clearing with vendor, dunning data (dunning procedure, dunning recipient, dunning block, dunning clerk, etc.), reconciliation account, sort key, sales area (purchasing organization in the case of vendor master), head office, etc. Except for sales (purchasing) related information, all other details are usually maintained for the finance people who can also access the sales data when the master is maintained ‘centrally.’

**Sales Area Data** in the Company Code area of a Customer master record contains the following:


- Order-related data (sales district, sales office, sales group, customer group, etc.)
- Price-related data (pricing group, pricing procedure, etc.)
- Shipping data (shipping strategy, delivery priority, etc.)
- Billing data (payment terms (different from the payment terms maintained at the Company Code level), account assignment group, etc.)

**Purchasing Organization Data** in the Company Code area of a Vendor master record contains the following:

- Conditions (order currency, payment terms, Incoterms, minimum order value, etc.)
- Sales data (a/c with Vendor)
- Control data (as in the screen shot below)

During creation of a master record, the system checks for ‘duplicates’ for the same customer which is achieved by the system through the ‘Search-Id’ (Match Code) configured on the customer’s address information.

As in the case of the GL account master record, the creation of the customer/ vendor master record is also controlled by the ‘Account Group,’ which is called ‘**Customer Account Group/Vendor Account Group**’ (CPD/CPDL/KREDI/LIEF) and controls the numbering of customer/vendor master records, field status, whether an account is a regular one or a ‘**One-Time**’ account, etc.

	<b>Transaction Code</b>
	As in the table below:

➡ Open table as spreadsheet

Activity	In Accounting		Centrally	
	Customer	Vendor	Customer	Vendor
Create	FD01	FK01	XD01	XK01
Change	FD02	FK02	XD02	XK02
Display	FD03	FK03	XD03	XK03
Block/Unblock	FD05	FK05	XD05	XK05
Mark for Deletion	FD06	FK06	XD06	XK06

Conditions	
Order currency	USD American Dollar
Terms of paymnt	ZB01
Incoterms	EXW
Minimum order value	
Schema Group, Vendor	Standard procedure vendor
Pricing Date Control	No Control
Order optim.rest.	

Sales data	
Salesperson	Mr. Miller
Telephone	
Acc. with vendor	

Control data	
<input type="checkbox"/> GR-Based Inv. Verif.	ABC indicator A
<input type="checkbox"/> AutoEvalGRSetmt Del.	ModeOfTmsprt-Border
<input type="checkbox"/> Acknowledgment Req'd	Office of entry
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Automatic purchase order	Sort criterion
<input type="checkbox"/> Subsequent settlement	
<input type="checkbox"/> Subseq. sett. index	<input type="checkbox"/> Grant discount in kind
<input type="checkbox"/> B.vol.comp./ag.nec.	<input type="checkbox"/> Relevant for price determ. (del.
<input type="checkbox"/> Doc. index active	
<input type="checkbox"/> Returns vendor	
<input type="checkbox"/> Srv.-Based Inv. Ver.	

Figure 41: Purchasing Data

### 183. Who is an 'Alternate Payee'?

A customer who pays on behalf of another customer is known as an '**Alternate Payee**' (or **Alternate Payer**). Though the alternate payee pays on behalf of another, the system maintains all the transaction details in the account of the original customer. Designating 'alternate payee' does not absolve the customer of his/her obligation for payment.

The 'alternate payee' can be maintained in Client-specific data or in the Company Code area. When maintained in the Company Code area you can use that payer only in that Company Code; if defined at the Client level you can use it across all Company Codes.

There are three ways to 'select' the alternate payee when an invoice is processed:

1. The alternate payee (say, 1000) entered in the customer master record is the one selected by the system as the default.
2. When there is more than one alternate payer (say, 1000, 1900, 2100, etc.) defined for a single customer in the master record (you will do this by clicking on the '**allowed payer**' button and create more than one payer), you may select a payer (say, 2100) (other than the default, 1000) while processing the invoice. Now the system will ignore the alternate payer (1000) coming from the master record.
3. If you have put a check mark in the 'individual entries' check box in the 'alternate payer in document' section in the customer master record, then this will allow you to propose a new alternate payer, say, 3000 (other than those already defined in the system). Now, after defining this alternate payer you can use it to process the invoice. In this case, the alternate payer (3000) takes precedence over the payers (1000 and 2100) in step 1 and 2 above.

## **184. What is the 'Trading Partner' concept?**

The 'Trading Partner' concept is used to settle and reconcile 'inter-company transactions,' both sales and purchases. This is generally achieved by entering the Company-ID (not the Company Code) to which a customer belongs in the 'trading partner' field under the tab 'Account Control' in the customer master record. You can do a similar entry in the vendor master record.

## **185. Explain 'Tolerance' in Transaction Processing.**

'Tolerances' are defined in the system to facilitate dealing with the differences arising out of accounting transactions and to instruct the system on how to proceed further. Normally, you define tolerances (either in 'absolute terms' or in 'percentages') beyond which the system will not allow you to post a document should there be a difference.

In SAP, tolerances are defined per Company Code and there are several types:

- Employee tolerance
- Customer/vendor tolerance
- GL account clearing tolerance

You will define an 'employee tolerance group' in the system and assign the employees to these groups. While defining the tolerance group you will specify:

### **1. Upper limits for various posting procedures**

- Amount per document
- Amount per open account item
- Cash discount, in percentage

### **2. Permitted payment differences**

How much over or under payment an employee is allowed to process. This is defined both in absolute values and in percentages.

Group			
Company code	4400	Thailand	Bangkok
Currency	THB		

Upper limits for posting procedures	
Amount per document	฿11.291.881.196,22
Amount per open item account item	5.112.918.811,96
Cash discount per line item	5,000 %

Permitted payment differences			
	Amount	Percent	Cash discnt adj.to
Revenue	511,29	10,0 %	5,11
Expense	511,29	10,0 %	5,11

Figure 42: FI Tolerance Group for Users

Besides defining the above two, at the Company Code level, you will also define similar tolerances for **customer/vendor tolerance group**. Once defined, each of the customers (vendors) is assigned to one of these groups. Here also, you define the ‘permitted payment differences’:

Currency	EUR
Tolerance group	DEB3

Specifications for Clearing Transactions	
Grace days due date	3
Arrears Base Date	

Permitted Payment Differences			
	Amount	Percent	Adjust Discount By
Gain	102,26	5,0 %	1,53
Loss	51,13	1,0 %	1,53

Permitted Payment Differences for Automatic Write-Off (Function Code AD)		
	Amount	Percent
Rev.		%
Expense		%


Specifications for Posting Residual Items from Payment Differences	
<input type="checkbox"/> Payment Term from Invoice	Fixed payment term
<input type="checkbox"/> Only grant partial cash disc	
Dunning key	

Figure 43: Customer/Vendor Tolerances

While processing, the system compares the tolerance of an employee against the customer tolerance (or vendor tolerance or the GL) and applies the most restrictive of the two.

## 186. What is 'Dual Control' in Master Records?

'Dual Control' helps to prevent unauthorized changes to the important and 'sensitive' fields in the master records in the system. (All such sensitive fields are defined in the Table **T055F** when customizing the application. And these fields are defined per Company Code and per Client.) Consider, for example, a sensitive field such as '**payment block**' in a vendor master record. When a user changes this field's content, the system requires another user (usually of higher authority) to approve this change and an **audit trail** is maintained of all such changes. Unless ' the change is approved, in this example, this particular master is blocked by the system for considering the same in the next '**payment run.**'

	<b>Transaction Code</b>
	As in the table below:

➡ Open table as spreadsheet


Activity	Customer	Vendor
Display changes (accounting area)	FD04	FK04
Display changes (centrally)	XD04	XK04
Confirm changes, individually	FD08	FK08
Confirm changes, in a list	FD09	FK09

## 187. What is a 'Bank Director' in SAP?

SAP stores the master data (details such as bank key, bank name, bank country, bank address, and so on) relating to the banks in the '**Bank Directory**' (Table: **BNKA**). Remember, the 'bank masters' are not created in the application but in the implementation side using the IMG. (Of course, you can also create the bank master in the application side in **FI-TR** and not in FI-GL or AP or AR.) However, if you are in the process of creating a master record for a vendor or a customer and you enter some bank details, which the system does not find in the 'Bank Directory,' then the system automatically brings in the relevant screens for you to maintain and update the bank details in the bank directory.

You may create the bank directory in two ways:

1. **Manually** (IMG path: Financial Accounting>Bank Accounting>Bank Accounts>Define 'House Banks')
2. **Automatically** (by importing the bank details using a special program)

	Transaction Code
	<b>FI01</b> (Banks)
	<b>FI12</b> (House bank)

## 188. What is a 'House Bank'?

A '**House Bank**' is the bank (or financial institution) in which the Company Code in question keeps its money and does the transactions from. A house bank in SAP is identified by a 5-character alphanumeric code. You can have any number of house banks for your Company Code, and the details of all these house banks are available in the '**bank directory**.'



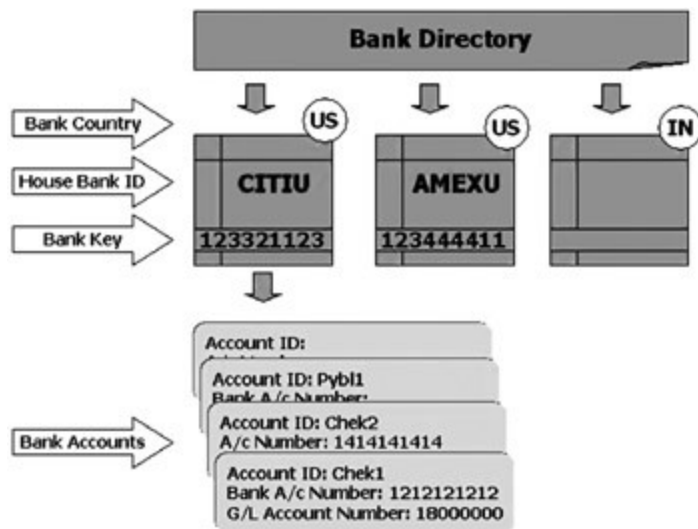


Figure 44: Bank directory

Each ‘house bank’ in the system is associated with a **country key** (U.S., IN, etc.) representing the country where the bank is located, and a unique country specific code called a ‘bank key.’ The system makes use of both the ‘country key’ and the ‘bank key’ to identify a ‘house bank.’

- For each of the ‘house banks,’ you can maintain more than one bank account; each such account is identified by an **account ID**; i.e., Chek1, Check2, Pybl1, etc. Here, ‘Chek1’ may denote Checking account 1, ‘Pybl1’ may denote Payables account 1, and so on. You may name the accounts in a way that it is easily comprehensible. The ‘Account ID’ is referenced in the customer/vendor master record and it is used in the payment program by the system.
- For each ‘account ID’ you will also specify the **bank account number** (maximum length of this identifier is 18 characters). You may name this in such a way that it is also easily comprehensible.
- For each ‘bank account number’ so defined in the ‘house bank,’ you need to create a GL account master record, and while doing so you will incorporate the ‘house bank id’ and the ‘account id’ in that particular GL master record.

## 189. Explain a 'Sales Cycle' in SAP.

A 'Sales Cycle' comprises all activities including quotation/inquiry, sales order, delivery, billing, and collection. The following are the various processes within SAP that complete a sales cycle:

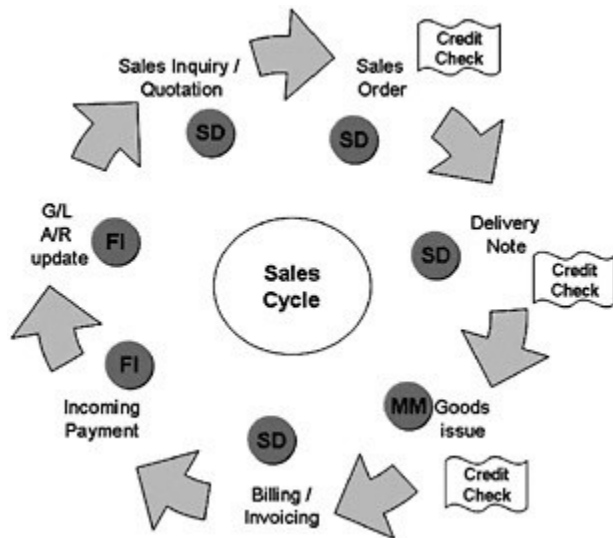


Figure 45: Sales Cycle

Typically, the following are the documents created during a sales cycle:

- Inquiry
- Quotation
- Sales Order
- Delivery Note
- Goods Issue
- Order Invoice
- Credit/Debit Note

## 190. Explain 'Automatic Account Assignment' in SD.

During goods issue in the sales cycle, the system is usually configured to update the relevant GL accounts automatically and to create the relevant accounting documents.

This customization in IMG is also called **material account assignment** and is achieved through a number of steps as detailed below:

1. Determine 'valuation level' (Company Code or plant).
2. Activate 'valuation grouping code' and link it with the 'chart of accounts' for each 'valuation area.'
3. Link 'valuation class' with 'material type' (FERT, HAWA, HALB, etc.) with the 'account category reference' (combination of valuation classes).
4. Maintain 'account modification codes' for 'movement types.'
5. Link 'account modification codes' with 'process keys' (transaction/event keys).
6. Maintain a GL account for a given combination of 'chart of accounts'+ 'valuation grouping code '+ account modification code '+ valuation classes.'

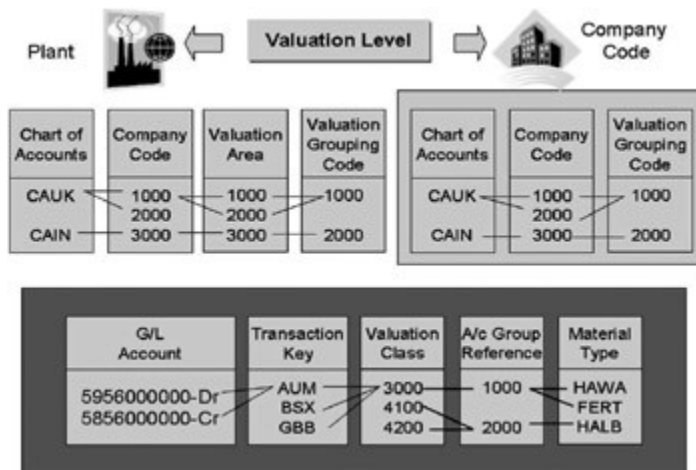


Figure 46: Automatic account determination in a sales cycle

The process of **Automatic Account Determination** is as follows:

1. Depending on the 'plant' entered during goods issue (GI), the 'Company Code' is determined by the system which in turn determines the relevant 'Chart of Accounts.'

2. The plant thus entered in goods issue determines the 'valuation class' and then the 'valuation grouping code.'
3. The 'valuation class' is determined from the 'material master.'
4. Since the 'account modification code' is assigned to a 'process key' which is already linked to a 'movement type,' the 'transaction key' (DIF, GBB, AUM, BSX, etc.) determines the 'GL account' as posting transactions are predefined for each 'movement type' in 'inventory management.'

### **191. Explain 'Revenue Account Determination' in SD.**

The billing documents created during the sales cycle results in automatic postings to GL accounts on the FI side. In general, '**Account Determination**' is based on the following five factors:

1. Chart of accounts
2. Sales organization
3. Account assignment group of the customer
4. Account assignment group of the material
5. Account key

The system determines the '**chart of accounts**' from the company code in the '**billing document**,' and the '**sales organization**' is determined from the corresponding '**sales order**.' The '**account assignment group**' is taken from the respective masters of customer/material. The '**account key**' helps the user to define the various GL accounts, and this key is assigned to the '**condition type**' (KOFI) in the '**pricing procedure**.'

These **GL accounts** are automatically determined when you make the following configuration in the system:

1. Assigning an 'account determination procedure' to a 'billing document type'
2. Assigning this 'account determination procedure' to a 'condition type'

3. Assigning this 'condition type' to an 'access sequence'
4. Configuring the 'condition tables'

Table	Description						
001	Customer /Material Grp./AccKey						
002	Cust. Grp/AccKey						
003	Material Grp/Acc Key						
004	General						
005	Acc Key						
Application	Condition Type	Chart of a/c	Sales Org	AcctAsg Grp	Acc Asgmt	A/c Key	GL a/c
001	Customer grp/Material Grp./AccKey: Details						
V	KOFI	COMP	1000	01	10	ERL	5012100000
V	KOFI	COMP	1000	01	10	ERS	5012100000
V	KOFI	COMP	1000	02	10	ERL	5012200000
V	KOFI	COMP	1000	02	10	ERS	5012200000
V	KOFI	COMP	2000	01	20	ERL	5013100000
V	KOFI	COMP	2000	01	20	ERS	5013100000
V	KOFI	COMP	2000	02	20	ERL	5013200000
V	KOFI	COMP	2000	02	20	ERS	5013200000
005	Acc Key: Details						
V	KOFI	COMP	1000			MWS	2470000000
V	KOFI	COMP	2000			MWS	2470000000



[Open table as spreadsheet](#)

Figure 47: Revenue account determination

## **192. Outline 'Credit Management' in SAP.**

'**Credit Management**' helps to determine credit limits of customers, aids in the creation of '**credit check**' policies, as well as helps companies monitor and evaluate their customers. This is a cross-functional responsibility in SAP, covering both the Sales and Distribution and Financial Accounting modules.

As in the case of any automated process such as dunning, payment, etc., credit management in SAP requires certain prerequisites be defined beforehand:

1. **Customer master data** has been created both in SD and FI.
2. **Credit control** area has been defined and assigned to a Company Code.

SAP makes use of the concept '**credit control area**' for credit management. As explained elsewhere, the credit control area is an organizational element defined to which one or more Company Codes are attached. In the case of customers defined under more than one Company Code, they may fall under different credit control areas. But note that:

- A Client can have more than one credit control area, but the converse is not true: one credit control area cannot be assigned to more than one Client.
- A credit control area can be assigned to more than one Company Code, but the converse is not true: one Company Code cannot be assigned to more than one credit control area.

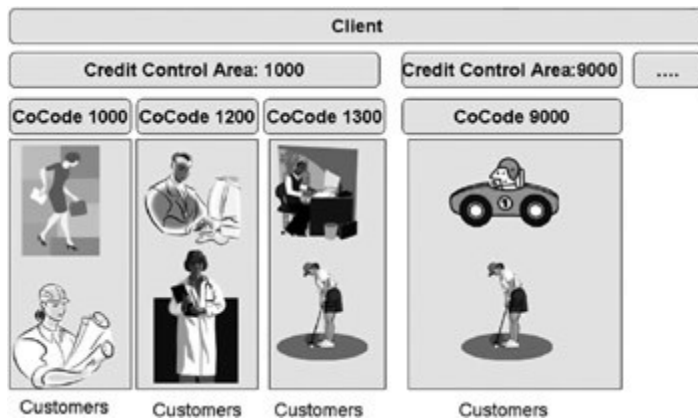


Figure 48: Client—Credit Control Area—Company Code—Customer

While defining the credit limit for a customer:

- - You will define a maximum limit per credit control area (Example: Credit Control Area AAAA->USD 500,000, Credit Control Area BBBB ->USD 200,000)
  - You will define a global maximum limit for all credit control areas put together (USD 600,000)
- 3. **Credit data** (per credit control area ‘maximum limit’ as well as the ‘total’ for all areas, in the control data screen) for the customer has been created.
- 4. **Risk categories** have been defined and assigned to customers.
- 5. **Credit groups** (document credit group) for document types have been defined. Document credit groups combine order types and delivery types for credit control.
- 6. Defined, in SD, at what time (when order is received or when a delivery is made, etc.) the **credit check** should happen.

The **credit management process** starts when a sales order is entered in SD. Imagine that this results in exceeding the credit limit defined for the customer. Now:

- a. The system creates three **comparison totals** considering (1) open receivables, (2) sales order values, value of goods to be delivered and the billing document value from SD, and (3) special GL transactions (e.g., ‘down payments’ and ‘bills of exchange’).
- b. Based on (a) above the system throws an (1) error message and prevents saving the order or (2) a warning message, and the system does not prevent saving, but the order is ‘blocked.’
- c. The **Credit representative**, using **information functions** (SD information system, FI information system, credit overview, credit master list, early warning list, oldest open item, last payment, customer master, account analysis, etc.), processes this blocked order either (1) from the ‘blocked SD documents list’ or (2) the mailbox, and releases the order, if necessary.
- d. Delivery is created, the billing document is generated and posted, and A/R is updated.
- e. Customer pays the invoice and A/R is posted.

### **193. What is a ‘Credit Check?’**

A ‘**Credit Check**’ is defined for any valid combination of the following:

- Credit control area
- Risk category
- Document credit group

### **194. Differentiate ‘Static Credit Check’ from ‘Dynamic Check.’**

Under ‘**Static Credit Check**,’ the system calculates the credit exposure of a particular customer as the total of:

- Open order (delivery not yet done)



- Open delivery (value of deliveries yet to be invoiced)
- Open billing documents (not transferred to accounting)
- Open items (AR item not yet settled by the customer)

Customer's credit exposure is not to exceed the established credit limit.

The '**Dynamic Credit Check**' is split into two parts:

- **Static limit:** Total of open items, open billing, and open delivery values.
- **Dynamic limit (Open Order Value):** The value of all undelivered and partially delivered orders totalled and stored on a time-scale in the future (10 days, 1 week, etc.) known as a '**horizon date.**'

During the 'dynamic credit check,' the system will ignore all orders beyond the 'horizon date.' The sum total of 'static' and 'dynamic' limits should not exceed the credit limit established for the customer.

## **195. List the Reports in 'Credit Management.'**

SAP provides you with the following **Reports in Credit Management:**

- **RFDKLI10** Customers with missing Credit Data
- **RFDKLI20** Re-organization of Credit Limit for Customers
- **RFDKLI30** Short Overview of Credit Limit
- **RFDKLI40** Overview of Credit Limit
- **RFDKLI41** Credit Master Sheet
- **RFDKLI42** Early Warning List (of Critical Customers)
- **RFDKLI43** Master Data List
- **RFDKLI50** Mass change of Credit Limit Data
- **RVKRED06** Checking Blocked Credit Documents
- **RVKRED08** Checking Credit Documents which reach the Credit Horizon

- **RVKRED09** Checking the Credit Documents from Credit View
- **RVKRED77** Re-organization of SD Credit Data

## **196. How does ‘Partial Payment’ differ from ‘Residual Payment’?**

When processing the **‘incoming payment’** to apply to one or more of the ‘open items’ of a customer, there may be a situation where the incoming payment is more than the **‘tolerances’** allowed. In this case, you can still go ahead and process the payment by resorting either to a Partial Payment or a Residual payment.

A **Partial payment** results in posting a credit to the customer’s ‘open item,’ but leaves the original item intact. As a result, no open item is cleared. During partial payment, the system updates the **‘invoice reference’** and **‘allocation’** fields.

In contrast to a partial payment, the **Residual payment** clears the particular ‘open item’ against which the payment is applied. However, since there are not enough amounts to clear the entire open item, the system creates a new open item, which is the difference between the original invoice item and the payment applied. Note that the new invoice/open item created by the system will have the new document date and new baseline date though you can change these dates.

## **197. What is ‘Payment Advice’?**

**‘Payment Advice’** helps in the automatic searching of ‘open items’ during the ‘clearing’ process to find a match for an ‘incoming payment.’ This is possible because you can use the ‘payment advice’ number instead of specifying parameters in the **‘selection screen.’** A typical payment advice may contain details such as document number, amount, currency, reason for underpayment, etc. The payment advices are of various categories; the first 2 digits of the payment advice number help to differentiate one payment advice from another:

- Bank advice

- EDI advice
- Lockbox advice (created during the clearing process, available in the system whether clearing was successful or not)
- Manual advice
- Advice from a bank statement

Most of the payment advices are deleted as soon as the clearing is successful in the system.

## **198. Describe ‘Lockbox’ Processing.**

‘**Lockbox**’ processing (configured in the FR-TR module) of incoming payments is used predominantly in the United States. Here, the bank receives the checks from customers as incoming payments, creates payment advice for each of these customer check payments, and informs the payee of the payment, in BAI file format. This lock box file is sent to the payee who imports the details into the system using this electronic file. The system updates the payments into the GL by way of ‘batch input’ processing.

## **199. How can ‘Reason Codes’ Help with Incoming Payment Processing?**

‘**Reason Codes**’ configured in the system help to handle the ‘payment differences’ of individual open items in an invoice (either using payment or advice or in the normal course). To each of the reason codes, you will define the ‘posting rules’ and the GL accounts in the IMG.

Once done, when there is a payment difference against a particular open item, the system looks for the reason code:

- When the ‘**charge-off indicator**’ has been set for that reason code, then the system posts the payment difference to a GL account. When this indicator is not set, then a new open item is created for the payment difference.

- When ‘**disputed item indicator**’ has been set, then the system ignores these line items when counting for the customer’s credit limit.

## 200. What is ‘Dunning’ in SAP?

The SAP System allows you to ‘dun’ (remind) business partners automatically. The system duns the open items from business partner accounts. The **dunning program** selects the overdue open items, determines the **dunning level** of the account in question, and creates **dunning notices**. It then saves the **dunning data** determined for the items and accounts affected. You can use the dunning program to dun both customers and vendors. It may be necessary to dun a vendor in the case of a debit balance as a result of a credit memo.

**Dunning** is administered through a Dunning Program, which uses a **dunning key** (to limit the dunning level per item), a **dunning procedure**, and a **dunning area** (if dunning is not done at the Company Code level).

Dunn.key	Max.level	Print sep	Text
0	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	Triggers maximum dunning level 1
2	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Triggers maximum dunning level 2
3	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	Triggers maximum dunning level 3
Z		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Payment has been made, separate item display

Figure 49: Dunning Key



## 201. What is a ‘Dunning Procedure’?

SAP comes equipped with a number or ‘**Dunning Procedures,**’ which you can copy, or you can create your own:

Procedure	Name
0001	Four-level dunning, every two weeks
0002	Four-level dunning, every month
0003	Payment reminder, every two weeks
FVVD	Four-level dunning, every two weeks (loans)
IMM0	Four-level dunning, every two weeks (real estate)

Figure 50: List of Dunning Procedures

A **dunning procedure** controls:

- **Dunning interval/frequency**
- **Grace days/minimum days in arrear**
- Number of **dunning levels** (at least one level)

Dunn.Procedure	0001			
Name	Four-level dunning, every two weeks			
Dunning level	1	2	3	4
<b>Days in arrears/interest</b>				
Days in arrears	2	16	30	44
Calculate interest?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<b>Print parameters</b>				
Always dun?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Print all items	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Payment deadline			10	7
<b>Legal dunning procedure</b>				
<input type="checkbox"/> Always dun in legal dunning proc.				

Figure 51: Dunning Levels

- Transactions to be dunned
- Interest to be calculated on the overdue items
- Known or negotiated leave, if any, which needs to be considered when selecting the overdue items

- Company Code data such as (a) Is dunning per ‘dunning area’? (b) Is dunning per ‘dunning level’? (c) Reference Company Code, (d) Dunning Company Code, etc.
- **Dunning forms/media** to be selected for the **dunning run**

Dunn.Procedure	0001		
Name	Four-level dunning, every two weeks		
<b>General data</b>			
Dunning Interval in Days		14	
No. of dunning levels		4	
Total due items from dunning level			
Min. days in arrears (acct)		6	
Line item grace periods		2	
Interest indicator		01	Standard itm int.cal
Public hol. cal. ID			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Standard transaction dunning			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Dun special G/L transactions			
<b>Reference data</b>			
Ref. Dunning Procedure for Texts	0001	Four-level dunning, every two weeks	

Figure 52: Control Information in a Dunning Procedure

## 202. What is the ‘Dunning Area’?

The ‘**Dunning Area**’ is optional and is required only if dunning is not done at the Company Code level. The Dunning area can correspond to a sales division, sales organization, etc.

## 203. Describe the ‘Dunning’ Process.

The ‘**Dunning Process**’ involves three major steps:

1. Maintaining the **parameters** for the **dunning run**
2. Creating/editing the **dunning proposal** generated by the system
3. Printing **dunning notices**

### 1. Maintaining Dunning Parameters

As the first step in dunning, you need to maintain certain parameters, which identify the current dunning run. Entering the date of execution and the

dunning run identifier is the starting point, after which you will continue to maintain other parameters such as:

- i. Dunning date to be printed on the notice
- ii. Document posted up to
- iii. Company Code
- iv. Account restrictions (optional)

Now, you can save the parameters and display the log generated (to see if there were any errors), the dunning list (list of accounts and items), and some dunning statistics (blocked accounts/items, etc.).

## 2. Creating a Dunning Proposal

Once scheduled, the 'dunning program' prepares the 'dunning proposal' as described below:

- a. The Dunning Program determines which accounts to dun:
  - i. System checks the fields '**Dunn.procedure**' and '**Last dunned**' in the customer master record to determine whether the arrears date or the date of the last dunning run lies far enough back in the past.
  - ii. Checks whether the account is blocked for dunning according to the dunning block field in the customer master record.
  - iii. Program processes all open items relating to the accounts thus released in (ii) above that were posted to this account on or before the date entered in the field '**Documents posted up to.**'
  - iv. Program checks all the open items, as released in (iii) above, in an account to decide:
    - Is the item blocked?

- Is it overdue according to the date of issue, the base date, the payment conditions, and the number of grace days granted?
- i. Program then proceeds to process all open items thus released in (iv):
  - How many days the item is overdue
  - Which 'dunning level' for a particular open item
- i. The program determines the highest 'dunning level' for the account based on (v) above. The highest 'dunning level' determined is stored in the master record of the account when you print the letters. This 'dunning level' determines the 'dunning text' and a 'special dunning form,' if defined.
- i. The program then proceeds to check each account:
  - Does the customer/vendor have a debit balance with regard to all open overdue items selected?
  - Is the total amount to be dunned and the percentage of all open items more than the minimum amount and percentage defined in the 'dunning procedure'?
  - Is the 'dunning level' for the account or the overdue items higher than it was for the last 'dunning run'? If not, are there new open items to be dunned (with a previous dunning level of 0)? If not, does the 'dunning procedure' for this level specify that dunning be repeated?
- a. The program creates the **dunning proposal list**
- b. Edit **dunning proposal list**
  - i. You can edit the Dunning Proposal to:



- Raise or lower the ‘dunning level’ of an item
  - Block an item from being dunned
  - Block an account for the current ‘dunning run’ or remove the block
  - Block an account in the master record for dunning or remove the block
  - Block a document for dunning or remove the block
- i. You can view the sample print out to ascertain how the printed notice will look (a maximum of 10 notices can be seen on the screen).
  - ii. You may also display ‘logs’ to see the changes made in the editing earlier, as a confirmation of what you wanted to change in the systemgenerated proposal earlier. If necessary, you can go back and change the proposal.

### 3. **Print Dunning Notices**

You can use a ‘single form’ or ‘multiple forms,’ which will have different text, based on the ‘dunning levels.’ There may also be a requirement to use a completely different form for **‘legal dunning.’** Once the print option is activated, the program prints the notices, and the dunning related information such as ‘dunning level,’ ‘last dunned,’ etc., are updated in the customer/vendor masters. SAP provides the option of optically ‘archiving’ the notices as the system prints the dunning notices. There is also a provision to re-start the printing if it is interrupted before completing the printing.

## **204. Can you ‘dun’ customers across ‘Clients’ in a Single ‘Dunning Run’?**

No. All the data processing is carried out per Client.

## **205. What differentiates one 'Dunning Level' from Another?**

The '**Dunning Level**' determines the 'dunning text' and (if one is required) a 'special dunning form.' The 'dunning program' determines what 'dunning level' should be used in the 'dunning run.' The dunning level so determined is stored in the master record of the account when the 'dunning letter' is printed. The dunning level may also determine whether there will be some 'dunning charges.'

## **206. How many 'Dunning Levels' can be Defined?**

You may define up to nine dunning levels. If there is only one dunning level, then it is called a '**payment reminder**.'

# Accounts Payables

## 207. Explain the 'Account Payables' Submodule.

'Accounts Payables,' a submodule under Financial Accounting (FI), takes care of vendor-related transactions as the module is tightly integrated with the purchasing transactions arising from the 'Procurement Cycle.' The module helps in processing outgoing payments either manually or automatically through the 'Automatic Payment Program.' It also helps in 'Vendor Evaluations.'

## 208. What Documents Result from 'Procurement Processes'?

In **Materials Management (MM)**:

- **PR:** Purchase Requisition (manual or automatic using MRP)
- **PO:** Purchase Order

In **Financial Accounting (FI)**:

- Invoice Verification
- Vendor Payment (manual or automatic)

Both MM and FI areas:

- Goods Receipt

You may also group these documents into (1) Order documents, (2) GR (Goods Receipt) documents, and (3) IR (Invoice Receipt) documents. While GR/IR documents can be displayed both in MM and FI views, the order documents can only be viewed in MM view.

## 209. Describe a 'Purchase Cycle.'

A '**Purchase Cycle or Procurement Cycle**' encompasses all activities including purchase requisition, purchase order, goods movement, goods receipt, invoicing,

invoice verification, payment to vendors, and ends with the updating of vendor account balances.

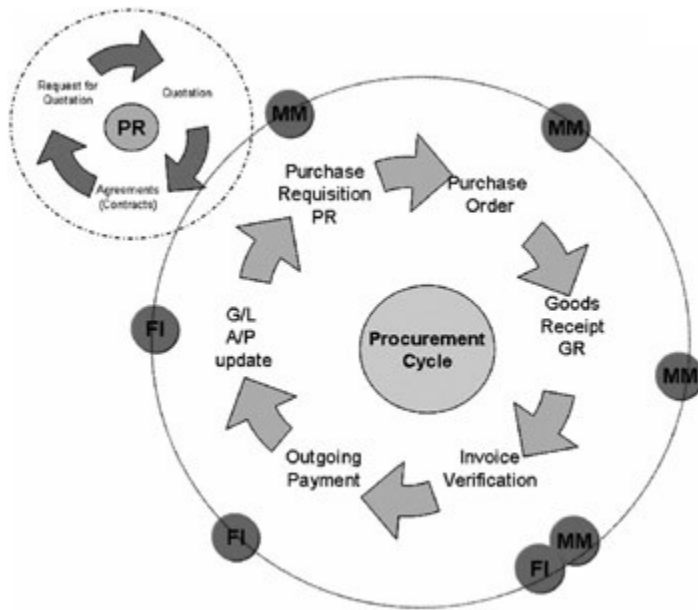


Figure 53: Procurement Cycle

## 210. What is a 'Purchase Requisition' (PR)?

A 'Purchase Requisition,' PR, is the document that outlines a company's purchasing needs of a material/service from vendor(s). A PR, typically an internal document that can be created automatically or manually, identifies the demand for a product and authorizes the purchasing department to procure it. In the automatic creation of a PR, this is done as a result of MRP (Material Requirements Planning). The PR, after identifying the vendor, is processed further to result in a RFQ (Request for Quotation) or directly to a Purchase Order (PO).

## 211. What is a 'Request for Quotation' (RFQ)?

A 'RFQ (Request for Quotation),' which can be created directly or with reference to another RFQ or a PR or an Outline Agreement, is actually an invitation to vendor(s) to submit a 'quotation' for supplying a material or service. The RFQ will contain the terms and conditions for supply. You may send the RFQ to single or

multiple vendors, and you can monitor it by sending reminders to those who have not responded to the RFQ.

## **212. What is an ‘Outline Agreement’?**

An **‘Outline Agreement,’** a declaration binding both the buyer and seller, is the buyer’s intention to purchase a material/service with certain terms and conditions agreed to by both parties. The essential difference between the ‘outline agreement’ and ‘quotation’ is that the outline agreement does not contain details such as delivery schedule or quantities. Outline agreements can be **contracts** or **scheduling agreements**.

## **213. What is a ‘Contract’?**

A **‘Contract,’** also referred to as a **‘Blanket Order,’** is a long-term legal agreement between the buyer and the seller for procurement of materials or services over a period of time. The contract, created directly or with reference to a PR/RFQ or another contract, is valid for a certain period of time with start and end dates clearly mentioned. There are two types of contracts: **Quantity Contracts** and **Value Contracts**.

## **214. What is a ‘Release Order’?**

A **‘Release Order’** is a ‘purchase order’ created against a Contract. The release orders usually do not contain information on quantities or delivery dates and are also called **‘Blanket Releases,’ Contract Releases,’** or **‘Call-Offs.’**

## **215. What is a ‘Scheduling Agreement’?**

A **‘Scheduling Agreement’** is also a long-term agreement with the buyer and seller for procurement of certain materials or services subject to certain terms and conditions. These agreements can be created directly or with reference to other documents such as another scheduling agreement, or an RFQ or PR. These

agreements help in promoting **Just-In-Time (JIT)** deliveries, less paperwork, they reduce supply lead times, and ensure low inventory for the buyer.

## **216. What is a 'Quotation'?**

A **'Quotation'** contains information relating to the price and other conditions for supply of a material or a service by a vendor, and is the vendor's willingness to supply the same based on those conditions. You will be able to compare the data from quotations using a **Price Comparison List** and will help in identifying the most reasonable vendor for supply of that item(s). After you receive the quotations, you will typically enter the quotation data (pricing/delivery) in RFQ. The SAP system can easily be configured to automatically print **'Rejections'** for vendors whose quotation are not selected.

## **217. What is a 'Purchase Order' (PO)?**

A **'Purchase Order' (PO)** is a legal contract between a vendor and a buyer concerning the material/service to be purchased/procured on certain terms and conditions. The order mentions, among other things, the quantity to be purchased, price per unit, delivery related conditions, payment/pricing information, etc.

A PO can be created:

1. Directly or
2. With reference to a PR/RFQ/contract or another PO. Remember, all items on a PO should relate to the same Company Code.

## **218. What is a 'PO History'?**

The **'Purchase Order History'** (PO History) lists all the transactions for all the items in a PO such as the GR/IR document numbers.

## 219. Will the FI Document be Created with the Purchase Order (PO)?

No. There will not be any document created on the FI side during creation of a PO. However, there can be a document for posting a 'commitment' to a Cost Center in CO. (The offsetting entry is posted at the time of GR.)

## 220. Explain FI-MM Integration.

**FI-MM Integration** is based on the following:

- Movement Types
- Valuation Class
- Transaction Keys
- Material Type

The **Movement Type** is the 'classification key' indicating the type of material movement (for example, goods receipt, goods issue, physical stock transfer). The movement type enables the system to find pre-defined posting rules determining how the accounts in FI (stock and consumption accounts) are to be posted and how the stock fields in the material master record are to be updated.

MvT	Movement Type Text
101	GR goods receipt
102	Reversal of GR
103	GR into blocked stck
104	Rev. GR to blocked
105	GR from blocked stck
106	Rev. GR from blocked
107	GR to Val. Bl. Stock
108	GR to Val. Bl. Rev.
109	GR fr. Val. Bl. St.
110	GR fr. Val. Bl. Rev.

Figure 54: Movement Types

The **Valuation Class** refers to the assignment of a material to a group of GL accounts. Along with other factors, the valuation class determines the GL accounts

that are updated as a result of a valuation-relevant transaction or event, such as a goods movement. The valuation class makes it possible to:

- Post the stock values of materials of the *same* material type to *different* GL accounts.
- Post the stock values of materials of *different* material types to the *same* GL account.

The **Transaction Key** (also known as the ‘**Event Key** or **Process Key**’) allows users to differentiate between various transactions and events (such as physical inventory transactions and goods movements) that occur within the area of inventory management. The transaction/event type controls the filing/storage of documents and the assignment of document numbers.

The **Material Type** groups together materials with the same basic attributes, for example, raw materials, semi-finished products, or finished products. When creating a material master record, you must assign the material to a material type. The material type determines:

- Whether the material is intended for a specific purpose, for example, as a Configurable Material or Process Material.
- Whether the material number can be assigned internally or externally.
- The Number Range from which the material number is drawn.
- Which screens appear and in what sequence.
- Which user department data you may enter.
- What Procurement Type the material has; that is, whether it is manufactured in-house or procured externally, or both.

Together with the plant, the material type determines the material’s inventory management requirement, that is:

- Whether changes in quantity are updated in the material master record.



- Whether changes in value are also updated in the stock accounts in financial accounting.

## **221. What Happens, in SAP, when You Post a ‘Goods Receipt’?**

When you post a **‘Goods Receipt’ (GR)**, the stock account is debited (stock quantity increases) and the credit goes to the **GR/IR Clearing Account**, which is the intermediate processing account, before you actually process the vendor invoice or payments to the vendor:

- Debit: Inventory Account
- Credit: GR/IR Clearing Account

During this (1) a material document is created, (2) an accounting document to update the relevant GL account is created, (3) PO order history is updated, and finally (4) the system enables you to print the GR slip.

## **222. Explain ‘Invoice Verification’ (IV) in SAP.**

**‘Invoice Verification’** involves:

1. Validating the accuracy of the invoices (quantity, value, etc.).
2. Checking for ‘blocked’ invoices (which vary to a great extent from that of the PO).
3. Matching of invoices received from vendors with that of the Purchase Order/ Goods Receipt. At this point in time, the PO History is updated for the corresponding PO Line Item(s) of the matched invoice.
4. Passing of matched invoices to the FI module. The system posts the following entries:
  - Debit: GR/IR Clearing Account
  - Credit: Vendor a/c (Accounts Payable open line item)

- Credit: GL Reconciliation Account

The different scenarios in invoice verification include:

1. GR-based Invoice Verification indicator is **not** set in the PO detail screen: Although this setting enables you to post the invoice referenced to a PO prior to making a GR, the system will block the invoice for payment (this kind of posting results in a **Quantity Variance** as there has not been a GR).
2. GR-based Invoice Verification indicator is set in the PO detail screen: When the PO number is referenced the system brings up all the unmatched items of GR in the selection screen. You will not be able to post the invoice for its full value, unless the PO has been fully received.

## **223. How do You Deal with ‘Tax’ when You Post an Invoice?**

When you enter an invoice, based on the configuration settings, the system checks the Tax Code and calculates the applicable tax or validates the Tax Amount entered by you:

1. **Manual Entry:** Input the **Tax Code** and the **Tax Amount**. The system will validate and issue a message in case it does not find the tax code or if the amount is different.
2. **Automatic Entry:** Leave the Tax Code and Tax Amount fields blank. Check the ‘Calculate Tax’ indicator. The system picks up the corresponding tax code and calculates the tax amount automatically.

## **224. What ‘Variances’ do You come Across in Invoice Verification?**

The system needs to be configured properly with ‘Tolerances’ so that you are not hampered with variances when you try Invoice Verification. You need to define the lower and upper limits for each combination of the Company Code and the tolerance key defined for the various variances. The system then checks these tolerance limits

and issues warnings or prevents you from proceeding further when you process an invoice.

**‘Variances’** arise because of mismatch or discrepancies between the invoice and the PO against which the invoice has been issued. Normally you will encounter:

1. **Price variances:** If there is a discrepancy in invoice price and PO item prices.
2. **Schedule variances:** If the planned delivery date is later than the invoice postings.
3. **Quantity variances:** If the delivered quantity (or delivered quantity less the previously invoiced quantity) is not the same as that of the invoiced quantity. When the invoiced quantity is more than the GR, the system requires more GRs to square off the situation.

## **225. Outline ‘Vendor Payments’ in the SAP System.**

The payments to single or multiple vendors can either be handled in a manual process or through an **‘Automatic Payment Program.’** The open liability item created for the vendor during the invoice verification will be squared off when you make the vendor payment or when you run the automatic payment program. The payment program in SAP is designed to allow you to enjoy the maximum discount allowed by that vendor.

## **226. Explain ‘Automatic Payment Program.’**

The **‘Automatic Payment Program’** in SAP helps to process payment transactions both with customers and vendors. AR/AP/TR/Bank Accounting uses the payment program.

The ‘automatic payment program’ helps in determining:

- **What is to be paid?** To do this, you specify rules according to which the open items to be paid are selected and grouped for payment.

- **When is payment to be carried out?** The due date of the open items determines when payment is carried out. However, you can specify the payment deadline in more detail via configuration.
- **To whom the payment is made?** You specify the payee (the vendor or the alternate payee as the case may be).
- **How the payment is made?** You determine rules that are used to select a payment method.
- **From where the payment is made?** You determine rules that are used to select a bank and a bank account for the payment.

## **227. Explain 'Automatic Payment Program' Configuration.**

Before you are ready to run the 'Automatic Payment Program,' the following should have been defined/configured in the system:

- **House Bank** and the corresponding **bank accounts**.
- **Payment Methods** to be used for the Company Code. SAP comes with predefined payment methods, both for AR and AP. The following payment methods are available for you to select from depending on the requirements:
  - a. Accounts Payable
    - Check (S)/Transfer/Postal Giro transfer/Bill of exchange
  - a. Accounts Receivable
    - Bank collection/Bank direct debit/Refund by check/Refund by bank transfer/BE payment request
- **Bank Chain** defined, if necessary. Bank chains are used to make payment via more than one bank, for example, via the correspondence banks of the house bank, the recipient bank, or the intermediary banks. You can define up to three banks.

- **Payment Forms** defined. SAP delivers standard forms, which can be modified, or new forms can be created for use.

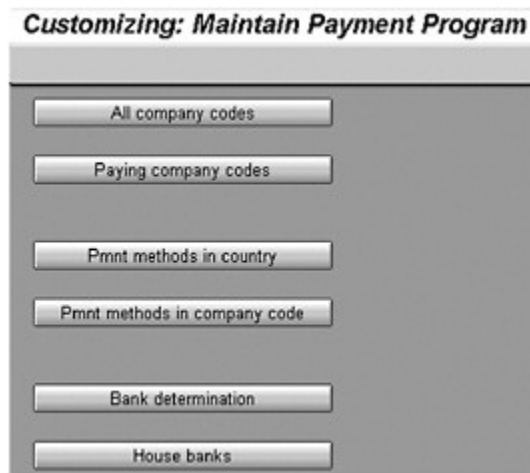


Figure 55: Customizing Automatic Payment program using FBZP

You may do most of the configurations by using the Transaction Code **FBZP** and branching to individual sections thereon. Or you may use the following Transaction Codes for individually doing it:

1. **(Sending) Company Code specifications**



- a. Sending the Company Code—if Company Code ‘A’ is making payments on behalf of ‘B,’ then ‘B’ is the Sending Company Code. Otherwise, the sending Company Code is considered the paying Company Code (both are one and the same).
- b. Tolerance days

c. Paying Company Code specifications

- Minimum amounts for incoming and outgoing payments.
- Forms for payment advice and EDI.
- Bill of Exchange parameters

2. **Payment Methods/Country and Bank determination**



a. Payment Methods/Country

- Payment Method for outgoing/incoming?
- Payment Method classification
- Master data requirements
- Posting details—document types
- Payment medium details—Print programs
- Permitted currencies (leave blank to allow all currencies)

a. Bank Determination

- Ranking Order
  - Per Payment Method:
    - Which bank should be used first, second, etc.
    - Currency
    - Bill of Exchange
- Bank accounts
- Available amounts
  - Per House Bank and Payment Method combination:

- Offset a/c for subledger posting
- Available funds in each bank
- Clearing accounts for Bill of Exchange
- Value date
- Charge

### 3. Payment methods per Company Code



a. For each Payment Method and Company Code you need to define:

- Minimum/maximum payment amounts
- Whether payment abroad or in foreign currency is allowed
- Payment Media
- Bank optimization

### 4. House Bank



## 228. How do You Execute an ‘Automatic Payment Program’?

The following are the series of events happening in the system when you try to execute an ‘Automatic Payment Program’:

### 1. Maintain Payment Parameters

To start with, you need to maintain the parameters required such as date of execution of ‘payment run,’ ‘payment run identifier,’ etc. Once this is done,

you need to specify the 'posting date' of these payments, the 'document date' up to which the program should consider the items, the paying Company Code, payment methods to be considered, the 'next posting date,' is there certain accounts which need to be excluded from the run, etc. The payment run then needs to be scheduled either immediately or at a specified time/date.

## 2. **Payment Proposal**

The system creates a 'payment proposal' based on the payment parameters maintained in (1) above. The system selects the eligible **Open Items** based on the following sequence:

- a. **Due date** is determined via the **Base Line Date** and the **Terms of Payment** for each of the line items.
- b. Program calculates the **Cash Discount Period** and due date for the **Net Payment**.
- c. **Grace Periods** are then added to this due date.
- d. Which **Special GL** accounts are to be included, based on what you have already maintained as the parameters in (1) above.
- e. The system will determine whether to include an item during the current run or for the future one based on the specifications you made in (1).
- f. **Blocking** an item.

The payment proposal can be displayed for further processing; the 'log' can be checked to see the system messages, and the exception list can be generated for further evaluation.

## 3. **Payment Proposal**

With the payment proposal available, you can now edit the proposal to:

- a. Change House Bank, from what was maintained earlier
- b. Change Payment Method, if necessary



- c. Change Payment Due Date to relax or restrict certain open items
- d. Block/Unblock line items

#### 4. **Payment Run**

After the payment proposal has been edited, you can run the **Payment Program** that creates the payment documents and prepares the data for printing the forms or creating the tape or disk. Before printing the forms, check the logs to determine that the payment program run was successful.

#### 5. **Print Run**

**Payment Medium Programs** use the data prepared by the payment program to create forms (payment advice, EDI accompanying sheet, etc.) or files for the data media. The data created by the payment program is stored in the following tables:

**REGUH** Payee or Payment Method data

**REGUP** Individual Open Items data

**REGUD** Bank Data and Payment Amounts data

You need to define **Variants** for print programs, which need to be defined:

- a. Per Payment Method per country->assign a Print Program
- b. To run the Print Program->at least one Variant per Print Program per Payment Method



## **229. Can You Pay a Vendor in a Currency Other than the Invoice Currency?**

With release 4.5A, you can pay a vendor in a currency that is different from that of the transaction/invoice currency. This is achieved by entering the required currency code directly in the open item. Prior to this release, to pay in a different currency, you had to manually process the payment.

## **230. What is a 'Payment Block'?**

A **'Payment Block'** prevents you from paying an open item of a vendor. The payment block is entered in the **'Payment Block'** field in a vendor master record or directly in the open line item.

Use the payment **'Block Indicators'** to define the **'Payment Block Reasons.'** You may use the SAP delivered payment block indicators (**A, B, I, R**, etc.) or create your own. An indicator such as **'\*'** is used when you want to skip the particular account, and a blank indicator indicates that the account/item is free for payment. However, for each of these 'block indicators,' you need to configure whether changes would be allowed while processing the payment proposal. Then, it is also possible to block a payment or release a blocked one while processing the **'Payment Proposal.'**

You may also propose a 'payment block indicator' while defining Terms of Payment.

## **231. How do you Release 'Blocked Invoices for Payments'?**

The system will **block an invoice** if it comes across with an item with a **'Blocking Reason.'** The blocking reason may be due to variances or inspection-related issues. When the system blocks an invoice for payment, the 'payment block' field is checked by the system.

You will use an **'Invoice Release Transaction'** to select the blocked invoices for processing further. The 'release' of blocked invoices for payments can be handled either manually or automatically.

## **232. What is the ‘Account Assignment Category’?**

The ‘**Automatic Account Assignment**’ logic takes care of posting to the correct GL accounts for ‘**Stock Material**’ with the ‘**Material Type**’ permitting inventory management, and the material master contains information as to which GL account needs to be updated. But there are material line items (‘**Non-Stock**’ materials) created manually in the Purchase Requisition/Purchase Order/Outline Agreement for which someone needs to decide the account assignment data and manually enter it in the Purchase Requisition. Here, the **Account Assignment Category** determines where to allocate the costs relating to such materials. The account assignment category helps you to define the type of account assignment (Sales Order-C, Project-P, Cost Center-K, etc.) and which accounts are to be posted to when GR/IR is posted to.

## **233. What is a ‘Credit Memo’?**

A ‘**Credit Memo**’ is issued by a vendor who has earlier supplied you some services or materials. The occasion is necessitated when the delivered goods are damaged or you have returned some of the goods back to the vendor. The system treats both the invoices and the credit memo in the same way, except that the postings are done with the opposite sign.

If the credit memo is for the entire invoiced quantity, the system generates the credit memo automatically. However, if the credit memo relates to a portion of the invoiced quantity, you need to process it manually in the system.

## **234. What are ‘Special GL Transactions’?**

‘**Special GL Transactions**’ are not directly posted to the GL (Reconciliation Accounts) though these are related to subledger accounts such as AR/AP. The transactions to these accounts are shown separately in the balance sheet. There are specific posting keys/indicators defined in the system to regulate the postings to these items. You need to specify a **Special GL Indicator** (such as a **F-Down Payment**

Request, A-Down Payment) for processing such a transaction. And the system will make use of the specially defined posting keys (09-customer debit, 19-customer credit, 29-vendor debit, and 39-vendor credit) for posting these special GL transactions.

There are three types of Special GL transactions:

- Free Offsetting Entries (Down Payment)
- Statistical Postings (Guarantee)
- Noted Items (Down Payment Request)

A	Down payment on current assets
B	Financial assets down payment
D	Discount
E	Unchecked invoice
F	Down payment request
G	Guarantee received
H	Security deposit
I	Intangible asset down payment
M	Tangible asset down payment
O	Amortization down payment
P	Payment request
S	Check/bill of exchange
V	Stocks down payment
W	Bill of exch. (rediscountable)

Figure 56: Special GL Indicators

## 235. Differentiate ‘Free Offsetting Entry’ from a ‘Statistical Posting.’

‘Free Offsetting Entry’ postings are part of the regular postings but with a freely definable offsetting entry, and relate to the **On-Balance Sheet Items**. On the other hand, in a **Statistical Posting**, you will always be posting to the same offsetting entry, and these are all the **Off-Balance Sheet Items**.

## **236. What is a 'Noted Item'**

'**Noted Items**' are never displayed on Financial Statements as they serve only as reminders of a financial obligation such as outstanding payments to be made or due to us, such as a '**Down Payment Request.**' This kind of posting does not update any GL account in the system but helps to keep track of such obligations for easy follow-up. This is also sometimes referred to as a '**Memo Entry.**'

It is interesting to note that while the Special GL Indicator for a Down Payment Request is '**F,**' you need to enter the indicator '**A**' as the target Special GL indicator while you are in the **Down Payment Request Entry Screen**. When you post this entry, the system creates a one-sided memo entry for the customer or vendor but does not update the GL.

## **237. Explain 'Asset Accounting' (FI-AA).**

The '**Asset Accounting**' (FI-AA) submodule in SAP manages a company's fixed assets, right from acquisition to retirement/scrapping. All accounting transactions relating to depreciation, insurance, etc., of assets are taken care of through this module, and all the accounting information from this module flows to FI-GL on a real-time basis.



Figure 57: FI-AA integration with other modules

You will be able to directly post (the goods receipt (GR), invoice receipt (IR), or any withdrawal from a warehouse to a fixed asset) from MM or PP to FI-AA. The integration with FI-AR helps in direct posting of sales to the customer account. Similarly, integration with FI-AP helps in posting an asset directly to FI-AA and the relevant vendor account in cases where the purchase is not routed through the MM module. You may capitalize the maintenance activities to an asset using settlements through the PM module. FI-AA and FI-GL has real-time integration where all the transactions such as asset acquisition, retirement, transfer, etc., are recorded simultaneously in both the modules. However, batch processing is required to transfer the depreciation values, interest, etc., to the FI module.

The FI-AA and CO integration helps in:

- Assigning an asset to any of the **Controlling Objects** such as cost center, internal order/maintenance order, or an activity type. **Internal Orders** act as a two-way link to the FI-AA: (i) they help to collect and pass on the capital expenditure to assets, and (ii) they collect the depreciation/interest from FI-AA to controlling objects. (Note that when there is a situation where the asset

master record contains an internal order and a cost center, the depreciation is *always* posted to the internal order and not to the cost center.)

- The depreciation and the interest are passed on to the cost/profit centers.

## 238. What is a 'Lean Implementation' in FI-AA?

A 'Lean Implementation' is the scaled-down version of the regular FI-AA configuration in IMG, with minimal configuration required to enable asset accounting. This is suitable for small companies using the standard functionalities of asset accounting, and also in situations where the Asset Catalog is not that large.

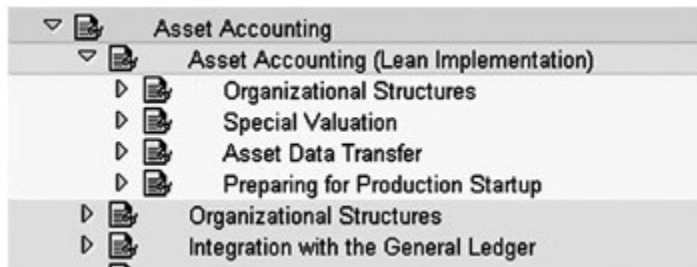


Figure 58: Lean implementation in FI-AA

You should not opt for lean implementation if:

- You need more than Depreciation Areas
- You need to Depreciate In Foreign Currencies as well
- You have Group Assets
- You need to define your own Depreciation Keys/Transaction Types/ Reports
- You need a Group Consolidation



## **239. What are the kinds of 'Assets' in SAP?**

An asset can be a **Simple Asset** or **Complex Asset**. Depending on the requirement, assets are maintained with **Asset Main Numbers** and **Asset Subnumbers**. A complex asset consists of many **Sub-Assets**; each of them identified using an asset subnumber. You may also use the concept **Group Asset** in SAP.

## **240. Explain 'Complex Assets' and 'Asset Subnumbers.'**

A '**Complex Asset**' in SAP is made up of many master records each of which is denoted by an '**Asset Subnumber**.' It is prudent to use asset subnumbers if:

- You need to manage the 'subsequent acquisitions' separately from the initial one (for example, your initial acquisition was a PC, and you are adding a printer later).
- You want to manage the various parts of an asset separately even at the time of 'initial acquisition' (for example, an initial purchase of a PC where you create separate asset master records for the monitor, CPU, etc.).
- You need to divide the assets based on certain technical qualities (keyboard, mouse, etc.).

When you manage a complex asset, the system enables you to evaluate the asset in all possible ways such as *(i)* for a single subnumber, *(if)* for all subnumbers, and *(iii)* for select subnumbers.

## **241. What is a 'Group asset' in SAP? When You will use This?**

A '**Group Asset**' in SAP is almost like a normal asset except that it can have (any number of) **sub-assets** denoted by **Asset Subnumbers**. The concept of group asset becomes necessary when you need to carry out depreciation at a group level, for some special purposes such as tax reporting. Remember that SAP's way of depreciation is always at the individual asset level. Hence, to manage at the group



level, you need the group asset. Once you decide to have group assets, you also need to have ‘special depreciation areas’ meant for group assets; you will not be able to depreciate a group asset using a normal depreciation area.

Unlike **Complex Assets**, you can delete a group asset only when all the associated subnumbers have been marked for deletion.

## **242. What is a ‘Asset Super Number’ in SAP?**

The concept of ‘**Asset Super Number**,’ in FI-AA, is used only for reporting purposes. Here, you will assign a number of individual assets to a single asset number. By using this methodology, you will be able to see all the associated assets with the asset super number as a single asset (for example, brake assembly line) or as individual assets (for example, machinery, equipment in the brake assembly line).

## **243. What is a ‘Chart of Depreciation’? How does it differ from a ‘Chart of Accounts’?**

A ‘**Chart of Depreciation**’ contains a list of country-specific depreciation areas. It provides the rules for the evaluation of assets that are valid in a given country or economic area. SAP comes supplied with default charts of depreciation that are based on the requirements of each country. These default charts of depreciation also serve as the ‘reference charts’ from which you can create a new chart of depreciation by copying one of the relevant charts. After copying, you may delete the depreciation areas you do not need. However, note that the deletion must be done before any assets are created.

You are required to assign a chart of depreciation to your Company Code. Remember that one Company Code can have only one chart of depreciation assigned to it, even though multiple Company Codes can use a single chart of depreciation.

The chart of accounts can be global, country specific, and industry specific based on the needs of the business. The chart of depreciation is only **country specific**. The charts are independent of each other.

➡ Open table as spreadsheet

<b><u>Chart of Depreciation</u></b>	<b><u>Chart of Accounts</u></b>
Established by FI-AA.	Established by FI.
A chart of depreciation is a collection of country specific depreciation areas.	The chart of accounts is a list of GL accounts used in a Company Code. The chart of accounts contains the chart of accounts area and the Company Code area.
The chart of depreciation is country specific. Usually you will not require more than one chart of account. SAP comes delivered with many country specific charts of depreciation as 'reference charts' which can be copied to create your own chart of depreciation.	Depending on the requirement you may have an 'operating chart of accounts,' 'country specific chart of accounts,' 'global chart of accounts,' etc.
One Company Code uses only one chart of depreciation.	One Company Code uses only one chart of accounts.
Many Company Codes, in the same country, can use the same chart of depreciation.	Several Company Codes within the same country can use the same chart of accounts.

## **244. How do You Create an 'Asset Accounting Company Code'?**

- i. Define the Company Code in FI configuration, and assign a chart of accounts to this Company Code.
- ii. Assign a chart of depreciation to this Company Code in FI-AA configuration.
- iii. Add necessary data for the Company Code for use in FI-AA, and your 'asset accounting Company Code' is now ready for use.

## 245. What is 'Depreciation'? Explain the Various Types.

'**Depreciation**' is the reduction in the **book value** of an asset due to its use over time ('decline in economic usefulness') or due to legal framework for taxation reporting. The depreciation is usually calculated taking into account the **economic life** of the asset, **expected value** of the asset at the end of its economic life (**junk/ scrap value**), **method of depreciation calculation** (straight line method, declining balance, sum of year digits, double declining, etc.), and the defined percentage decline in the value of the asset every year (20%, or 15%, and so on).

The depreciation can either be planned or unplanned.

**Planned depreciation** is one which brings down the value of the asset after every planned period; say every month, until the asset value is fully depreciated over its life period. With this method, you will know what the value of the asset at any point of time in its active life.

On the contrary, **unplanned depreciation** is a sudden happening of an event or occurrence not foreseen (there could be a sudden break out of a fire damaging an asset, which forces you to depreciate fully as it is no longer useful economically) resulting in a permanent reduction of the value of the asset.

In SAP, you will come across three types of depreciation:

1. **Ordinary depreciation**, which is nothing but 'planned depreciation.'
2. **Special depreciation**, which is over and above 'ordinary depreciation,' used normally for taxation purposes.
3. **Unplanned depreciation**, which is the result of reducing the asset value due to the sudden occurrence of certain events.

## 246. Define 'Depreciation Areas.'

Fixed assets are valued differently for different purposes (business, legal, etc.). SAP manages these different valuations by means of '**Depreciation Areas**.' There are

various depreciation areas such as book depreciation, tax depreciation, depreciation for cost-accounting purposes, etc.

Chart of dep. 1IN Sample chart of depreciation: India				
Define Depreciation Areas				
Ar.	Name of depreciation area	Real	G/L	Trg
1	Book depreciation	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1	
15	Depreciation as per Income Tax Act 1961	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0	
20	Cost-accounting depreciation	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	3	
30	Consolidated balance sheet in local currency	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0	
31	Consolidated balance sheet in group currency	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0	
32	Book depreciation in group currency	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0	
41	Investment support deducted from asset	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0	
51	Investment support posted to liabilities	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1	

Figure 59: Depreciation Area

A depreciation area decides how and for what purpose an asset is evaluated. The depreciation area can be ‘real’ or a ‘derived one.’ You may need to use several depreciation areas for a single asset depending on the valuation and reporting requirements.

The depreciation areas are denoted by a 2-character code in the system. The depreciation areas contain the depreciation terms that are required to be entered in the **asset master** records or **asset classes**. SAP comes delivered with many depreciation areas; however, the depreciation area **01—Book Depreciation** is the major one.

Chart of dep.	1IN	Sample chart of depreciation: India
Deprec. area	1	Book depreciation
		Book deprec.
<b>Define Depreciation Areas</b>		
Real Depreciation Area	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Posting in G/L	Area Posts in Realtime	
Target Ledger Group		
Different Depreciation Area		
Cross-syst. dep. area		
<b>Value Maintenance</b>		
Acquisition value	Only Positive Values or Zero Allowed	
Net book value	Only Positive Values or Zero Allowed	
Investment grants	Only Negative Values or Zero Allowed	
Revaluation	No Values Allowed	
Ordinary depreciat.	Only Negative Values or Zero Allowed	
Special Depr.	No Values Allowed	
Unplanned Depreciat.	Only Negative Values or Zero Allowed	
Transfer of reserves	No Values Allowed	
Interest	No Values Allowed	
Revaluation ord.dep.	No Values Allowed	

Figure 60: Details of 01-Book Depreciation

The other depreciation areas are:

- Book depreciation in group currency
- Consolidated versions in local/group currency
- Tax balance sheet depreciation
- Special tax depreciation
- Country-specific valuation (e.g., net-worth tax or state calculation)
- Values/depreciations that differ from depreciation area 01 (for example, cost-accounting reasons)
- Derived depreciation area (the difference between book depreciation and country-specific tax depreciation)

## **247. How do You Set up 'Depreciation Area postings' to FI from FI-AA?**

You need to define how the various depreciation areas need to post to FI-GL. It can be any one of the following scenarios:

- Post depreciation through 'periodic processing.'
- Post both the APC (Acquisition and Production Costs) and depreciation through periodic processing.
- Post the APC in 'real time' but depreciation through periodic processing.
- No values are posted.

However, you need to ensure that at least one depreciation area is configured to post values automatically to the FI-GL. Normally, this depreciation area will be 01 (book depreciation). For the rest of the depreciation areas, it may be configured that they derive their values from this area and the difference thus calculated is automatically posted to FI-GL. There may also be situations where you may define depreciation areas just for reporting purposes, and these areas need not post to the GL.

## **248. What is an 'Asset Class'?**

An 'Asset Class' in SAP is the basis for classifying an asset based on business and legal requirements. It is essentially a grouping of assets having certain common characteristics. Each asset in the system needs to be associated with an asset class.

Class	Short Text	Asset class description
1100	Buildings	Buildings
2000	Machines decl. depr.	Machines declining depr.
2100	Machines str.-line	Machines straight-line-depr.
2200	Group assets	Group assets (USA/Canada only)
3000	Fixture and fitting	Fixture and fittings
3100	Vehicles	Vehicles
3200	Personal computers	Personal computers
4000	Assets under Constr.	Assets under construction
4001	AuC for Measures	Assets under construction in investment me
5000	LVA (individ. mgmt.)	Low value assets (individual management)
5001	LVA (collect. mgmt.)	Low value assets (collective management)
6000	Leased assets	Leased assets
6001	Leased assets	Leased assets
9000	Leasing objects	Leasing objects
9360	Adm Purchasing	Administration Purchasing

Figure 61: Asset Class

An asset class is the most important configuration element that decides the type of asset (such as land, buildings, furniture and fixtures, equipment, assets under construction, leased assets, low-value assets, etc.), the document number range, data entry screen layout for asset master creation, GL account assignments, depreciation areas, depreciation terms, etc. An asset class is defined at the Client level and is available to all the Company Codes of that Client.

The asset class consists of:

- A **header** section—control parameters for master data maintenance and account determination.
- A **master data** section—default values for administrative data in the asset master record.
- A **valuation** section—control parameters for valuation and depreciation terms.

The asset class can be:

- Buildings
- Technical assets
- Financial assets
- Leased assets

- AuC (assets under construction)
- Low value assets

## **249. Why do You need 'Asset Classes'?**

An 'Asset Class' is the link between the asset master records and the relevant accounts in the GL. The account determination in the asset class enables you to post to the relevant GL accounts. Several asset classes can use the same account determination provided all these asset classes use the same chart of accounts and post to the same GL accounts.

## **250. What is an 'Asset Class Catalog'?**

An 'Asset Class Catalog' contains all the asset classes in an enterprise and is therefore valid across the Client. Since an asset class is valid across the Client, most of the characteristics of the asset class are defined at the Client level; however, there are certain characteristics (such as the depreciation key, for example), which can be defined at the chart of depreciation level.

## **251. Is it Possible to Create 'Asset Classes' Automatically?**

One of the benefits of lean implementation configuration is the ability to create asset classes automatically from the asset GL accounts. This tool selects only necessary system settings so that the asset classes are created automatically in a very short time. During the process of creation, the system allows you to delete all the existing objects (i.e., asset classes, number ranges, account allocations, field selections, etc.) before creating the new ones.

The prerequisites for automatic asset class creation include:

- Company Code must be assigned to a chart of depreciation
- Depreciation areas have already been defined
- GL account number is not more than 8 digits (otherwise you need to assign the classes manually)



Also note that you may need to maintain the GL account for ‘accumulated depreciation’ manually. The system maintains the necessary account assignment only with regard to the depreciation area 01 (book depreciation). If you need more areas, you may need to do that manually in the IMG.

## **252. What is an ‘Asset Value Date’?**

The ‘**Asset Value Date**’ is the start date of depreciation for the asset. The ‘planned depreciation’ is calculated by the system based on this depreciation start date and the selected ‘depreciation term’ for that asset. Be careful with the posting date and asset value date. Both dates need to be in the same fiscal year.

## **253. What is an ‘Asset Master’?**

An ‘**Asset Master**’ can be created by copying an existing asset in the same Company Code or another Company Code; it can also be created from scratch when it is done for the first time. Again, while creating the master, SAP allows you to create multiple assets in one step, provided all such assets are similar (having the same asset class and all belonging to the same Company Code).

From Release 4.5, the transaction codes for creating an asset master have been changed to the AS series instead of the earlier AT series (for example, create asset is code **AS01** (**AT01** before), change asset is **AS02** (**AT02** before), and so on. If you are more comfortable with the creation of assets using the conventional screen than with the ‘tab’ feature available now in the AS transaction series, you can do so, but you cannot find these transactions under ‘**ASMN**’!

Each asset master contains the necessary information to calculate the depreciation:

- Capitalization date/acquisition period
- Depreciation areas relevant for the asset
- Depreciation key
- Useful life/expired useful life

- Change over year, if any
- Scrap value, if any
- Start date of (ordinary depreciation)

## 254. Explain the Two Ways used to Create 'Asset Masters.'

- Copy an existing asset as a reference for creating the new one.
- From an existing asset class create a new asset so that this asset class provides the default control parameters for the new asset.

## 255. Is it Possible to Create Multiple Assets in a Single Transaction?

SAP enables you to create multiple (but similar) assets in one transaction. What you need to know is that all these assets should belong to the *same* asset class and the *same* Company Code. Enter the number of assets you need to create in the '**Number of similar assets**' field. After creating the assets, you will be able to change the individual descriptions/inventory numbers when you are about to save the master records. When you save the master records, the system assigns a range of asset numbers.

**Create Asset: Initial screen**

Master data		Depreciation areas	
Asset Class	3100		
Company Code	1000		
Number of similar assets	10		

Figure 62: Create multiple assets



The only drawback of using this method of creating assets in bulk is that you will not be able to create long text for any of these assets.

## **256. What is the ‘Time-dependent Data’ in an Asset Master?**

All the cost accounting assignment-related data such as cost center, internal orders or investment projects, etc., need to be maintained as ‘**Time-dependent Data**’ in asset masters. Additionally, the information related to **asset shut-down** and **shift operation** also needs to be maintained as time dependent. SAP maintains all the time-dependent data for the entire life span of the assets.

## **257. Explain ‘Asset Acquisition.’**

‘**Asset Acquisition**’ can be through any one of the following three routes:

### **1. External Acquisition through Purchase**

External acquisition of assets will be primarily from vendors, who are either your business partners or third parties. It can also be from your affiliated companies (use **Transaction Code: ABZP**). The external asset acquisition can be done several ways:

- i. The asset can be posted in the MM module.
- ii. The asset can be created in FI-AA with automatic clearing of the offsetting entry (Transaction Code: ABZON). This can be achieved either of the following ways:
  - a. The posting is made initially in FI-AP and the clearing account cleared when the posting is made to the asset (FI-AA).

- b. Post the asset with the automatic offsetting entry (FI-AA) and then clear the clearing account through a credit posting by an incoming invoice (FI-AP).
- i. When *not* integrated with FI-AP, you may acquire the asset in FI-AA with an automatic offsetting entry without referencing a Purchase Requisition (PR). This kind of acquisition is necessary when:
  - a. You have not yet received the invoice or
  - b. When the invoice has already been posted in FI-AP
- i. When integrated with FI-AP, acquire the asset in FI-AA using an incoming invoice but without a reference to a Purchase Order (PO).

## 2. **In-house Production/Acquisition**

**In-house Asset Acquisition** is primarily the capitalization of goods/services produced by your company. The costs associated with the complete or partial production of the goods/services from within the company needs to be capitalized into separate asset(s). Usually, the capitalization is done as follows:

- i. Create an order/project (in Investment Management) to capture the production costs associated with the goods/services produced in-house.
- ii. Settle the order/project to an AuC (Asst under Construction).
- iii. Distribute/Settle the AuC so created into new asset(s). You will be using the **Transaction Type 110** for asset acquisition from in-house production.

## 3. **Subsequent Acquisition**

When the asset/vendor accounts are posted, the system updates the corresponding GL accounts (FI-AP and FI-AA) through relevant account determinations. SAP uses various kinds of 'transaction types' to distinguish the

different transactions. During acquisition the system makes the following entries in the asset master data:

- Date of initial acquisition/period and year of acquisition.
- Capitalization date of the asset.
- Start date for ordinary depreciation (the start date is determined from the asset value date/period/year of acquisition).
- Vendor is automatically entered in the 'origin.'

## **258. What are Automatically Set in the Asset Masters During 'Initial Acquisition'?**

- Date of capitalization
- Acquisition period
- Posting date of original acquisition
- Depreciation start date (per depreciation area)

## **259. Why it is Necessary to 'Block' an Asset Master Record?**

In case you decide that you do not want to post any more acquisitions to an existing asset, then it is necessary for you to set the **Block Indicator** in the asset master record. This is usually the case with AuC, where after the capitalization you no longer want any further additions to the asset. The block indicator prevents only further postings but not transfers or retirements or depreciation; even after an asset is blocked, you can continue to depreciate it as in the case of other assets.

## **260. How do you 'Delete' an Asset Master?**

You can '**Delete an Asset Master**' record from the system only when there are no transactions posted to it. The system will not allow you to delete the master record if there are transactions against the asset, even if you reverse all the previous transactions pertaining to the asset and bring down the asset value to zero. However,

unlike FI-AR, FI-AP, or FI-GL where **archiving** is a prerequisite to delete the master records, you may delete the asset master records without archiving. When deleted, the system also deletes the asset number.

## 261. What is an ‘(Asset) Transaction Type’ in FI-AA?

‘Transaction Types’ in FI-AA identify the nature of an asset transaction (acquisition or transfer or retirement) to specify what is updated, among (a) Depreciation area, (b) Value field, and (c) Asset accounts (in B/S).

TTy	Transaction type name
020	Acquisition:Cost-accounting area only
030	Acquisition in the group area
040	Acquisition in the tax area only
060	Acq. areas 01, 02, 20
100	External asset acquisition
101	Acquisition for a negative asset
105	Credit memo in acquis. year
106	Credit memo in invoice year to affiliated
110	In-house acquisition
115	Acquisition from settlement from CO to
116	Acquisition from settlement of order / W
120	Goods receipt
121	Goods receipt for production order
122	Goods receipt from affiliated company (r
130	Goods issue (External production)
131	Goods issue (In-house production)
140	Incidental costs without capitalization
145	Gross interco.transf.acq. curr-yr.acq. aff
146	Gross interco.transf.acq. curr-yr.acq. aff
147	Gross interco.transf. acquis. of prior-yr i
148	Gross interco.transf.acquis. of current-y
150	Acquisition from an affiliated company

Figure 63: (Asset) Transaction types

The following are some of the common transaction types used:

- **100** Asset Acquisition—Purchase
- **110** Asset Acquisition—In-house Production
- **200** Asset Retirement—Without revenue
- **210** Asset Retirement—With revenue

The transaction type is extensively used in most asset reports, including the **asset history sheet**, to display the various asset transactions differentiated by the

transaction types. SAP comes with numerous transaction types, which will take care of almost all your requirements. However, should there be a specific case, you may also create your own transaction type.

Every transaction type is grouped into a **Transaction Type Group** (for example, 10 -> Acquisition), which characterizes the various transaction types (for example, transaction types 100 and 110) within that group. The system makes it possible to limit the transaction type groups that are associated with certain asset classes.

## **262. Explain 'Assets under Construction' (AuC) in SAP.**

The goods and/or services produced, in-house, can be capitalized into asset(s). But, there are two distinct phases during this process:

1. Construction phase (AuC)
2. Utilization phase (useful or economic life phase)

It then becomes necessary to show the assets under these two phases in two different balance sheet items:

The 'construction phase' is one in which you start producing or assembling the asset but it is not yet ready for economic utilization. SAP categorizes these kinds of assets into a special asset class called '**Assets under Construction**' (AuC).

The AuC is managed through a separate asset class with a separate asset GL account. SAP allows posting 'down payments' to AuC. It is also possible to enter credit memos for AuC even after its complete capitalization, provided you are managing this asset class and allowing negative **APC (Acquisition and Production Costs)**. The **IM (Investment Management)** module helps to manage internal orders/projects for AuC. It is necessary to use the depreciation key '0000' to ensure that you are not calculating any depreciation for AuC. But you can continue to have **special tax depreciation** and **investment support** even on these assets.

## 263. How do You Capitalize AuC in SAP?

An ‘**Asset under Construction**’ can be managed in two ways as far as the asset master is concerned:

- As a ‘normal’ asset.
- As an asset with ‘line item management.’

Later on, the AuC is capitalized and transferred to regular asset(s) by ‘distribution’/‘settlement.’ While doing so, the system, with the help of different **transaction types**, segregates the transactions relating to the current year with that of the previous years. The capitalization can be:

1. Lump sum capitalization.
2. With line item settlement (when capitalized using line item settlement, it is not necessary to settle all the line items and 100% in a particular line item).

In the case of integration with SAP-IM (Investment Management), capital investments can be managed as an AuC by:

- Collecting the production costs associated with an order/project.
- Settling the collected costs to an AuC.
- Capitalizing the AuC into new assets by distribution/settlement.

	Transaction Code
	<b>AIAB</b> <b>AIBU</b>

## 264. What do You mean by ‘Low Value Assets’?

SAP uses the term ‘**Low Value Assets**’ to denote assets that will be depreciated in the year of purchase or in the period of acquisition. This categorization usually follows the statutory requirements of the country of the Company Code, wherein you define a monetary limit and consider all those assets falling below the value, say



\$1,000, as low value assets. You have the flexibility of managing these assets either on an individual (**individual check**) basis or a collective basis (**quantity check**).

SAP uses a special **depreciation key** called LVA, and the expected useful life of such an asset is considered to be one period (month).

## **265. Explain 'Asset Transfer' in SAP.**

There are two types of 'Asset Transfers,' namely:

1. Inter-company asset transfer
2. Intra-company asset transfer

**Inter-company Asset Transfer** is between Company Codes, resulting in the creation of the new asset in the target Company Code (the receiving one). The transaction posts the values per the 'posting method' selected during the transfer. In doing so the system:

- Retires the asset in the source/sending Company Code by **asset retirement**.
- Posts acquisition in the new/target Company Code by **asset acquisition**, and creates the new asset in the target Company Code.
- Posts inter-company profit/loss arising from the transfer.
- Updates FI-GL automatically.

An inter-company asset transfer is usually necessitated when there is a need for physically changing the location from one company to the other or there is an organization restructuring and the new asset is to be attached to the new Company Code. You may use the standard **Transfer Variants** supplied by SAP. The selection of a suitable transfer variant will be based on the legal relationship among the Company Codes and the methods chosen for transferring the asset values.

Inter-company asset transfers can be handled:

- Individually using the normal transaction for a single asset.

- For a number of assets using the ‘**mass transfer.**’

If you need to transfer assets cross-system, you need to use ALE functionality.

**Intra-company Asset Transfer** is the transfer of an asset within the same Company Code. This would be necessitated by:

- Change in the asset class or business area, etc.
- Settlement of an AuC to a new asset.
- Transfer of stock materials into an asset (by posting a GI to an order through MM or settlement of a production order to an asset).
- Splitting an existing asset into one or more new assets.



## 266. What is a ‘Transfer Variant?’

A ‘**Transfer Variant**’ is dependent on whether the Company Codes involved are legally dependent or independent. Transfer variants specify how the transferred asset will be valued at the receiving Company Code and the type of transaction (acquisition or transfer) used for the transaction.

Vari...	Name
1	Gross method
2	Net method
3	Revaluation method
4	Transfer within a company code
5	Summary settlement from CO
6	Line item settlement from CO or from AuC
7	Gross variant (affiliated company)
8	Gross variant (non-affiliated company)
FIN	Finland - Transfer assets EVL depreciation

Figure 64: Transfer variant

## 267. Explain 'Asset Retirement' in FI-AA.

'Asset Retirement' is an integral part of asset management. You may retire an asset by sale or by scrapping. In the case of sales, it can be with revenue or without revenue; again, the asset sale can be with the customer or without the customer.

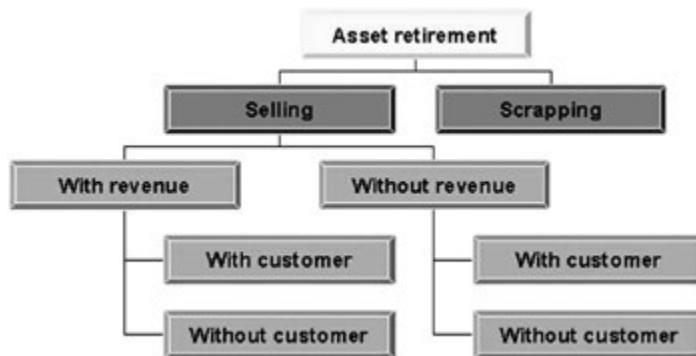



Figure 65: Asset Retirement

During asset sales transactions, the system removes the **APC (Acquisition and Production Costs)** and also the corresponding **accumulated depreciation**, then the **profit or loss** arising from the sale is recorded in the system. Even in the case of 'partial retirement' or 'partial sales,' the system records the proportionate gain/ loss arising from the transaction. Any tax posting arising from the transaction is automatically created by the system.

SAP provides various ways of posting retirement in the system, which includes:

- Mass retirement
- Asset retirement with revenue
  - With customer (involving integration with FI-AR)
    - Debit customer, credit assets
  - Without customer
- Asset retirement without revenue
  - With customer

- Debit clearing account, credit asset
- Debit customer in A/R, credit the clearing account
- Asset retirement using GL document posting

	Transaction Code
	<b>ABOAN</b> (Asset sale without customer)

## 268. Describe Transfer of 'Legacy Asset Data' to SAP.

One of the challenges in the implementation of FI-AA is the transfer of '**Legacy Asset Data**' from your existing systems to SAP FI-AA. Though SAP provides multiple options and appropriate tools to carry out this task, you need a carefully planned strategy for completing this task. You may have to transfer the old asset values through any one of the following ways:

- Batch data inputs (large number of old assets)
- Directly updating the SAP Tables (very large number of old assets)
- Manual entry (few old assets)

Normally, you will not have to use the manual process as it is time consuming and laborious; however, you may do this if you have a very limited number of assets. Otherwise, you may use either of the other two options, though batch data input with error handling is the preferred way of doing it. You need to reconcile the data transferred, if you resort to any of the two automatic ways of transferring the data. You may also use **BAPIs (Business Application Programming Interface)** to link and process the asset information in SAP FI-AA from non-SAP systems.

The transfer can be done at the end of the last closed fiscal year, or during the current fiscal year following the last closed fiscal year. You will be able to transfer both master data as well as accumulated values of the last closed fiscal year. If required,

you can also transfer asset transactions, including depreciation, during the current fiscal year. It is important to note that the GL account balances of the old assets need to be transferred separately.

## 269. Outline 'Automatic Transfer of Old Assets'

SAP provides you with the necessary interfaces for converting your 'legacy asset data' into prescribed formats for upload into the SAP system. The **data transfer workbench** allows you to control the entire data transfer process.

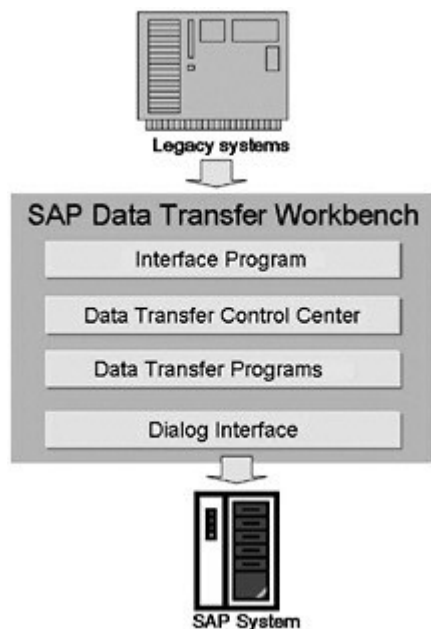


Figure 66: Legacy asset transfer to SAP FI-AA

- i. These interface programs convert the data so that it is compatible with SAP data dictionary tables such as **BALTD** for master data and **BALTB** for transactions. If you have more than 10 depreciation areas, then you need to change the transfer structures for both **BALTD** and **BALTB**.
- ii. The converted data is stored in sequential files.
- iii. Use the data transfer program **RAALTD01** (for batch input) or **RAALTD11** (direct table update) for transferring the data to SAP.
  - Do a **test run**. This will help to correct errors if any.

- Do a **production run**, with a few asset records, to update the relevant tables in FI-AA.
  - Reset the values in the asset Company Code.
  - Continue with the production run for all the assets.
- iv. All the asset records without errors will be updated immediately through background processing in relevant tables such as **ANLH, ANLA, ANLB, ANLC**, etc.
- v. The records with errors will be stored in a separate batch input session, which can be processed separately.

## **270. What is an 'Asset Transfer Date'?**

The '**Asset Transfer Date**' refers to the 'cut-off' date for the transfer of old assets data from your existing system. Once established, you will not be able to create any old assets in SAP before this reference date. Any transaction happening after the transfer date but before the actual date of asset transfer needs to be created separately in SAP after you complete the old asset transfer.

## **271. Describe 'Mass Change/How do You Achieve this?**

'**Mass Change**' enables you to make changes (such as mass retirements, changes to incomplete assets, etc.) in FI-AA to a large number of asset master records at one time. The mass change functionality is achieved through **work lists**, which are FI-AA standard tasks pre-defined in the system. These tasks are assigned with 'work flow objects,' which can be changed according to your specific requirements. The work lists are created in several ways from asset master records, asset value displays, from the asset information system, etc.

To make a mass change you need to:

1. Create a **substitution rule(s)** in which you will mention what fields will be changed. This rule will consist of an 'identifying condition' (for example, if

the cost center=1345), and a 'rule to substitute' new values (for example, replace the 'field' cost center with the 'value' '1000').

2. Generate a list of assets that need to be changed.
3. Create a 'work list' to carry out the changes.
4. Select the appropriate 'substitution rule' (defined earlier in step 1 above).
5. Process the 'work list.' You may also release it to someone else in the organization so that he/she can complete the task.
6. Run a 'report' to verify the changes.

## **272. What is 'Periodic Processing' in FI-AA? Explain.**

**'Periodic Processing'** in FI-AA relates to the tasks you need to carry out at periodic intervals to plan and post some transactions. The tasks include:

- Depreciation calculation and posting.

As you are aware, SAP allows automatic posting of values from only one depreciation area (normally 01 -book depreciation). For all other depreciation areas, including the derived ones, you need to perform the tasks periodically so that FI is updated properly.

- Planned depreciation/interest for CO primary cost planning.
- Claiming and posting of 'investment support' (either 'individually' or through 'mass change').

## **273. What is a 'Depreciation Key'?**

Depreciation is calculated using the **'Depreciation Key'** and **Internal Calculation Key** in the system. Depreciation keys are defined at the chart of depreciation level, and are uniform across all Company Codes, which are attached to a particular chart of depreciation. The depreciation key contains all the control amounts defined for the calculation of planned depreciation. The system contains a number of predefined

depreciation keys (such as **LIMA**, **DWG**, **DG10**, etc.) with the controls already defined for calculation method and type. A depreciation key can contain multiple internal calculation keys.

Chart of dep. <b>1IN</b> Sample chart of depreciation: India		
DepKy	Name for whole depreciation	Status
0000	No depreciation and no interest	Active
DG20	Declining balance 2 x	Active
DG25	Declining balance 2.5 x	Active
DG30	Declining balance 3 x	Active
DIG4	Sum-of-the-years-digits dep. 4 years	Active
GD10	Buildings decl.bal.10.0/ 5.0 / 2.5 %	Active
GD35	Buildings decl.bal.3.5/ 2.0 / 1.0 %	Active
GD50	Buildings decl.bal. 5.0 / 2.5 / 1.25 %	Active
GD70	Buildings decl.bal. 7.0 / 5.0 / 2.0 / 1.25 %	Active
GL20	Buildings straight-line 2%	Active
GL25	Buildings straight-line 2.5%	Active
GWG	LVA 100 % Complete depreciation	Active
IN1	Tax Depreciation - 5% - India	Active

Figure 67: Depreciation Key

## 274. What is an ‘Internal Calculation Key’?

‘**Internal Calculation Keys**’ are the control indicators within a ‘depreciation key.’ Together with the depreciation key, these calculation keys help in determining depreciation amounts. Each internal calculation key contains:

1. Depreciation type (ordinary or unplanned)
2. Depreciation method (straight-line or declining balance)
3. Base value
4. Rate of percentage for depreciation calculation
5. Period control for transactions (acquisition, retirement, etc.)
6. Change-over rules (in case of declining/double declining methods of calculation)
7. Treatment of depreciation after useful life period



## **275. What is known as a ‘Depreciation Run’ in SAP?**

The ‘**Depreciation Run**,’ an important periodic processing step, takes care of calculating depreciation for assets and posting the corresponding transactions in both FI-AA and FI-GL. The depreciation calculation is usually done in sessions, and the **posting session** posts the different depreciation types, interest/re valuation, and also writing-off/allocating special reserves. The depreciation run should be started with a ‘test run’ before making it the ‘**production run**,’ which will update the system. The system will restart a run session should there be problems in the earlier run. The depreciation run needs to be completed per period. During every depreciation run, the system will create summarized posting documents per business area and per account determination; no individual posting documents are created.

## **276. Explain the Various Steps in a ‘Depreciation Run.’**

1. Maintain the parameters for the depreciation run on the initial screen of the Transaction **AFAB** (Company Code, fiscal year, and posting period).
2. Select a ‘reason’ for the posting run (repeat run, planned posting run, restart run, or unplanned run).
3. Select the appropriate check boxes in the ‘further option’ block if you need a list of assets, direct FI posting, test run, etc. Please note that it is a good practice to select the ‘test run’ initially, see and satisfy the outcome of the depreciation run, then remove this ‘check box’ and go for the ‘productive run.’
4. Execute the test run (if the assets are less than 10,000, you may then do the processing in the foreground; otherwise execute the run in the background).
5. Check the results displayed.
6. Once you are convinced that the test run has gone as expected, go back to the previous screen, uncheck the ‘test run’ check box, and execute (in the background).

7. Complete the 'background print parameters,' if prompted by the system. You may also decide to schedule the job immediately or later. The system uses the 'depreciation-posting program' **RABUCH00**, for updating the asset's values and generating a batch input session for updating FI-GL. The 'posting session' posts values in various depreciation areas, interest, and revaluation, besides updating special reserves allocations and writing-off, if any. If there are more than 100,000 assets for depreciation calculation and posting, you need to use a special program, **RAPOST00**.
8. Process the 'batch input session' created by the system in step-7 above. You may use the Transaction Code **SM35**. Again, you have the option of processing the session in the foreground or in the background.
9. System posts the depreciation in FI-GL.

## **277. How does the System Calculate 'Depreciation'?**

1. The system takes the 'depreciation terms' from the asset master record and calculates the annual depreciation for the asset taking into account the 'useful life' and the 'depreciation key.' The start date for depreciation is assumed to be the first date of acquisition of the asset.
2. The system may also calculate other values such as interest, revaluation, etc.
3. The depreciation and other values are calculated for each of the depreciation areas.

## **278. Explain 'Derived Depreciation.'**

**'Derived Depreciation'** is a separate depreciation area that is 'derived' from two or more 'real depreciation' areas using a pre-determined rule. You may use this to calculate something such as **special reserves** or to show the difference in valuation between local and group valuation, etc. Since the values are derived, the system does not store any values in the database, but updates the derived values whenever there

are changes in the real depreciation area or its depreciation terms. You may also use the derived depreciation only for reporting purposes.

## **279. What is known as a 'Repeat Run' in the Depreciation Process?**

A **'Repeat Run'** is normally used at the end of the fiscal year to carry out posting adjustments or corrections that may arise due to changes in depreciation terms or manual depreciation calculations. However, you can also use this to repeat but within the same posting period. The 'repeat run' also provides the flexibility to restrict the calculations to specific assets.

## **280. What does 'Restart a Depreciation Run' Mean?**

**Restart Depreciation Run** is used only when there has been a problem with the previous run resulting in the termination of that run. To make sure that all the steps in a depreciation run are completed without errors, the system logs the status at every stage of the processing and provides 'error logs' to find the problem. This 'restart' option is not available during the 'test run' mode.

## **281. What is 'Depreciation Simulation'?**

**'Depreciation Simulation'** refers to a 'what if valuation of assets. This is achieved by changing and experimenting with the 'parameters' required for depreciating the assets. The simulation helps you to 'foresee' the depreciation should there be changes in various 'depreciation terms.' You may simulate to see the valuation for future fiscal years. **Sort versions** and options for **totals report** are also available in simulation. The depreciation simulation can be applied to a single asset or your entire asset portfolio.

## **282. What is a ‘Sort Version’?**

A **‘Sort Version’** defines the formation of groups and totals in an asset report. You can use all the fields of the asset master record asset group and/or sort criteria for defining a sort version. The sort version cannot have more than five **sort levels**.

## **283. Can you select ‘Direct FI Posting’ for a ‘Depreciation Run’?**

If the check box to enable **‘Direct FI Posting’** is clicked then the system will not create the ‘batch input session’ for a depreciation posting; instead, the FI-GL is posted directly. Be careful when checking the Direct FI Posting check box because there will not be an opportunity to correct mistakes, if any, in accounts and account assignments such as business area, cost objects, etc., when you execute the depreciation run. Also, you will not be able to check and correct postings. Note that if this option is selected during a depreciation run, and if the run is terminated for any reason and needs to be restarted, this has to be kept checked during that time as well.

The standard system comes with the document type **‘AF’** (number range defined as ‘external numbering’) configured to be used in ‘batch input.’ Hence, with this default configuration, you will get an error when you try a depreciation posting run by selecting the option ‘direct FI posting.’ You can, however, overcome this by not restricting the same FI-AA customization. (Use Transaction Code **OBA7** and remove the check mark from ‘Batch input only’ check box.)

## **284. Explain ‘Year Closing’ in FI-AA.**

The year-end is closed when you draw the final balance sheet. But, to reach this stage, you need to ensure that the depreciation is posted properly; you can achieve this by checking the ‘depreciation list’ and also the ‘asset history sheets.’ After this is done, draw a test balance sheet and profit and loss statement and check for the correctness of the depreciation. Correct the discrepancies, if any, with adjustment

postings. You need to re-run the depreciation posting program if you change any of the depreciation values.

When you now run the **‘Year-End Closing Program,’** the system ensures that the fiscal year is completed for all the assets, depreciation has fully posted, and there are no errors logged for any of the assets. If there are errors, you need to correct the errors before re-running the year-end program. When you reach a stage where there are no errors, the system will update the last closed fiscal year, for each of the depreciation areas for each of the assets. The system will also block any further postings in FI-AA for the closed fiscal year. If you need to re-open the closed fiscal year for any adjustments postings or otherwise, ensure that you re-run the year-end program so that the system blocks further postings.

## 285. Explain ‘Asset History Sheet.’

SAP comes delivered with country-specific **‘Asset History Sheets,’** which meet the legal reporting requirements of a specific country. The asset history sheet is an important report that can be used either as the **year-end report** or the intermediate report whenever you need it. Asset history sheets help you to freely define the report layout, headers, and most of the history sheet items.

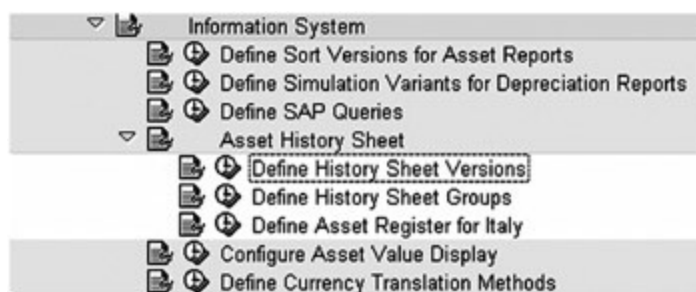


Figure 68: Configuring Asset History Sheet

You may create various versions of the Asset History Sheet:

Asset hist. sheet versions		
Language	Hist.sht.ver	Asset history sheet name
EN	0001	In compl. w/EC directive 4 (13 col.,wide version)
EN	0002	In compliance with EC directive 4 (13 col.)
EN	0003	Depreciation by depreciation type
EN	0004	Acquisition values
EN	0005	Asset Register (Italy)
EN	0006	Cost-accounting w/revaluation (derived from HGB2)
EN	0007	Transferred reserves
EN	0008	History of res.for spec.depr.

Figure 69: Asset History Sheet Versions

For each of the versions, you will be able to define various columns according to your requirements:

Asst.hist.sht.version	0006	Cost-accounting w/revaluation (derived from HGB2)					
Language Key	EN						
<input type="checkbox"/> Hist sheet complete							
Hist. sheet positions							
	Column	06	Column	10	Column	20	Column
Line	02	APC FY start	Acquisition	Retirement	Transfer		
Line	04	Dep. FY start	Dep. for year	Dep.retir.	Dep.transfer		
Line	06	Bk.val.FY strt					
Line							

Figure 70: Field Positions in an Asset History Sheet Version

## 286. What is an 'Asset Explorer'?

'Asset Explorer' is a handy and convenient single interface transaction that helps you to display asset values, depreciation details, etc., in a very user friendly way. Gone are the days where you had to move to different pages and re-enter the same transaction many times to display the details of different assets.

Using asset explorer you have the convenience of:

- Moving from one asset number to the other effortlessly.
- Displaying asset values, both planned and posted, for any number of depreciation areas from the same page but in various tab pages.
- Jumping to the asset master or cost center master or GL account master.

- Calling up various asset reports.
- Currency converted views.
- Looking at the various transactions relating to an asset.
- Looking up all the values for different fiscal years.
- Distinguishing between real and derived depreciation areas with two differentiating symbols.
- Displaying the **depreciation calculation function**, and if necessary, recalculating depreciation.

Asset explorer is designed for easy navigation, with the following sections:

1. **Asset values window**

The top-left area/window is the ‘asset values’ window, which is in a tree-like structure expanding to various depreciation areas such as 01, 03, 10, etc. By selecting any one of these depreciation areas, you will be able to view the value of an asset in the ‘asset value details window.’

2. **Objects related to asset window**

This is also on the left-hand side of the display page, just below the ‘asset values window.’ With a drill-down tree-like structure you will be able to navigate between cost centers and GL accounts relating to the asset.

3. **Asset value detail window** (with tab pages)

This is the main window on the right, usually occupying most of the page area. Here, you will see information such as Company Code, asset number selected, fiscal year, etc. This window is made of two components that are completely re-sizeable: the top area displaying the asset values and the bottom showing the asset transactions.

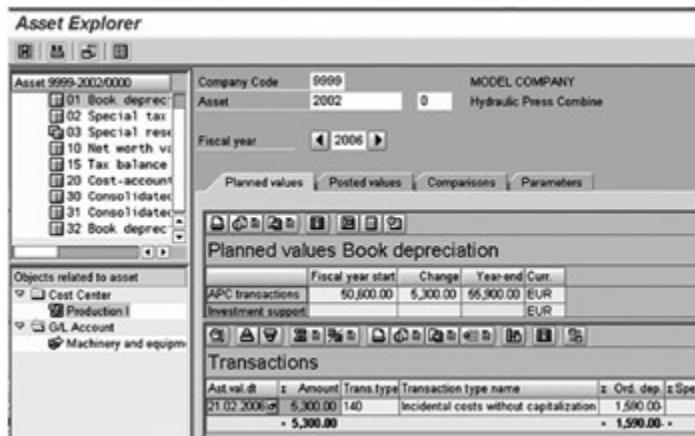


Figure 71: Asset Explorer

## 287. Explain 'Production Set-up' in FI-AA.

The 'Production Set-up' is a collection of logical steps in FI-AA to ensure that all the required configuration and activities are in place for making the asset accounting Company Code 'productive.' This includes:

### i. Consistency check

This will enable you to analyze errors, if any, in FI-AA configuration in the charts of depreciation, assignment of Company Code to the chart of depreciation, definition of depreciation areas, asset classes, GL account assignments, etc.

### ii. Reset Company Code

As you will have test data, before the Company Code becomes productive, resetting the company is necessary to delete all this data. Note that this is possible only when the Company Code is in 'test' status. All the master records and values will be removed only from FI-AA. You need to remove all the FI and CO values separately as the resetting of the asset account Company



Code does not remove these. Resetting will not remove any configuration settings of FI-AA.

iii. **Reset posted depreciation**

This step is required when there had been errors during a previous depreciation run. This is also possible only when the asset Company Code is in test status.

iv. **Set/reset reconciliation accounts**

Define the GL accounts for FI-AA reconciliation, if not done already. You may also reset already defined reconciliation accounts in the case of wrong account assignments earlier.

v. **Transfer asset balances**

Transfer the asset balances to the GL accounts that have been defined as the asset reconciliation accounts.

vi. **Activate asset accounting Company Code**

This is the last step in the production set-up. All the previous statuses of the Company Code (test status/transfer status) become invalid now. No more transfer of old asset data is allowed when the asset Company Code becomes productive.

## **Controlling (CO)**

### **General Controlling**

#### **288. Explain 'Controlling (CO)' in SAP.**

SAP calls **managerial accounting 'Controlling'** and the module is commonly known as **'CO.'** The CO module is, thus, primarily oriented towards managing and reporting cost/revenue and is mainly used in 'internal' decision-making. As with any other module, this module also has configuration set-up and application functionality.

The controlling module focuses on internal users and helps management by providing reports on cost centers, profit centers, contribution margins and profitability, etc.

## 289. What are the Important ‘Organizational Elements of CO’?

The important organizational structure of controlling includes:

- **Operating Concern** (the top-most reporting level for profitability analysis and sales and marketing controlling).
- **Controlling Area** (central organization in ‘controlling,’ structuring internal accounting operations).
- **Cost Centers** (lower-most organizational units where costs are incurred and transferred).

## 290. What is a ‘Controlling Area’? How is it Related to a Company Code?

A ‘**Controlling Area**’ is the central organizational structure in ‘**controlling**’ (CO) and is used in cost accounting. The controlling area, as in the case of a Company Code, is a self-contained cost accounting entity for internal reporting purposes. The controlling area is assigned to one or more Company Codes to ensure that the necessary transactions, posted in FI, are transferred to controlling for **cost accounting** processing.



Figure 72: Operating Concern, Controlling Area, and Company Code

Controlling Area	4300	
Name	India	
Person Responsible	I017532	
<b>Assignment Control</b>		
CoCd->CO Area	Cross-company-code cost accounting	
<b>Currency Setting</b>		
Currency Type	10	Company code currency
Currency	INR	Indian Rupee
Curr/Val. Prof.		
<b>Other Settings</b>		
Chart of Accts	INT1	Chart of accounts - international
Fiscal Year Variant	K4	Calendar year, 4 spec. periods
CCTR Std. Hierarchy	H43	
<b>Reconciliation Ledger</b>		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Recon. Ledger Active		
Document Type		

Figure 73: Controlling Area—Details

- One controlling area can be assigned one or more Company Codes.
- One chart of accounts can be assigned to one or more controlling areas.
- One or more controlling areas can be assigned to an operating concern.
- One Client can have one or more controlling areas.

## 291. Outline ‘Company Code—Controlling Area’ Assignments.

There are two types of assignments possible between the Company Code and a controlling area:

- **One-to-one:** Here, one Company Code corresponds to one controlling area.
- **Many-to-one:** More than one Company Code is assigned to a single controlling area.

## 292. Explain the Different Types of ‘Controlling Area/Company Code’ assignments.

→ [Open table as spreadsheet](#)

Controlling area-Company Code assignment	1:1 assignment	1: many assignments (cross-Company Code cost accounting)
Chart of accounts	The chart of accounts should be the same between the controlling area and the Company Code.	The ‘operative chart of accounts’ of the Company Codes, and the controlling area should be the same.
Fiscal year variant (special and posting periods)	The number of special periods may be different between the Company Code and the controlling area, but the number of posting periods should be the same.  Also, the period limits of posting periods should be identical.	
Controlling area currency	Same as the Company Code currency.	You may use the same currency as that of the Company Code.
		You may also use another currency in controlling
Object currency	Additional currency, besides the controlling area currency, can be used for each account assignment objects in CO.	You can choose any object currency if all the assigned Company Codes have the same currency that are the same as the controlling area currency. Otherwise, the system automatically assigns the Company Code currency to the account assignment object

Controlling area-Company Code assignment	1:1 assignment	1: many assignments (cross-Company Code cost accounting)
		as an object currency.
Transaction currency	Documents are posted in CO in the transaction currency.	
Allocations	Cross-Company Code cost allocation in CO is not possible.	Cross-Company Code allocation in CO is possible.

### 293. What are the ‘Components of Controlling’?

There are three major submodules in CO and each of these submodules has many components as detailed below:

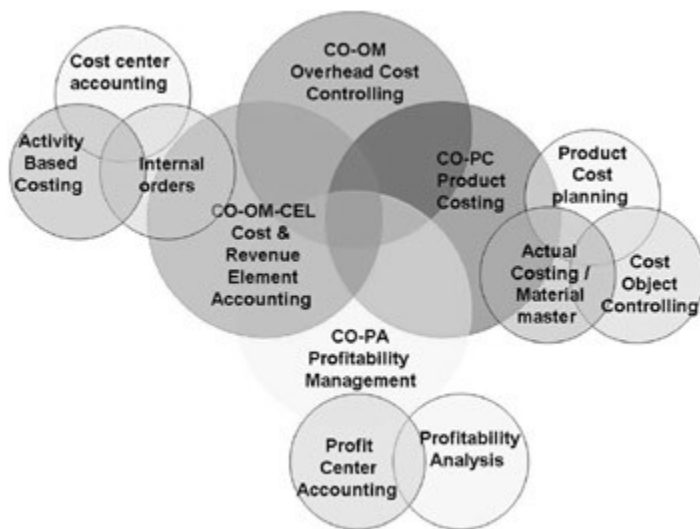


Figure 74: Controlling Module’s Components

- Cost Element Accounting
- Cost Controlling
- Cost Center Accounting

- Internal Orders
- Activity-Based Costing
- Product Cost Controlling
- Profitability Analysis
- Profit Center Accounting

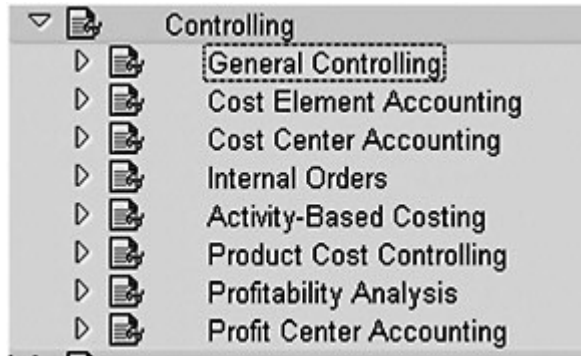


Figure 75: Controlling Components

## 294. Why do You Need ‘Cost Element Accounting’?

‘**Cost Element Accounting**’ (CO-OM-CEL) helps you to classify costs/revenues posted to CO. It also provides you the ability to reconcile the costs between FI and CO. CO-OM-CEL provides the structure for assignment of CO data in the form of cost/revenue carriers called **cost elements** or **revenue elements**.

## 295. Explain ‘Cost Center Accounting.’

‘**Cost Center Accounting**’ deals with the difficult task of managing ‘overheads’ within your organization. Since **overhead costs** are something that you cannot directly associate with a product or service, which can be difficult to control, cost center accounting provides you with the necessary tools to achieve this.

## 296. What is ‘Activity-Based Costing’?

‘**Activity-Based Costing**,’ popularly known as **ABC**, helps you to view overhead costs from the point of business processes. The result is you will be able to optimize

costs for the entire business process. As a single business process, activity-based costing will cut across several cost centers and will give you an enhanced view of the costs incurred.

## **297. What is ‘Product Cost Controlling’ (CO-PC)?**

‘Product Cost Controlling’ (CO-PC) deals with estimating the costs to produce a product/service. CO-PC is divided into two major areas:

- i. Cost of materials
- ii. Cost of processing

With CO-PC, you can calculate:

- a. Cost of goods manufactured (COGM)
- b. Cost of goods sold (COGS)

CO-PC is tightly integrated with **Production Planning** (PP) and **Materials Management** (MM), in addition to FI. The functionality helps to:

- Calculate Standard Costs of manufactured goods
- Calculate the Work-in-Progress (WIP)
- Calculate the Variances, at period-end
- Finalize settlement of product costs

Note that CO-PC deals only with production costs as it deals only with the production.


## **298. What is ‘Profitability Analysis’ (CO-PA)?**

‘Profitability Analysis’ (CO-PA) helps you determine how profitable (denoted by the ‘**contribution margin**’) your market segments are. The analysis is on the external side of the market. You will be able to define what segments, such as customer, product, geography, sales organization, etc., of the market are required for analyzing

‘operating results/profits.’ With multi-dimensional ‘drill-down’ capability, you have all the flexibility you need for reporting.

## 299. How is ‘Profit Center Accounting’ (EC-PCA) Different from CO-PA?

Unlike CO-PA where the focus is on external market segments’ profitability, ‘**Profit Center Accounting**’ (EC-PCA) focuses on profitability of internal areas (**profit centers**) of the enterprise. Profit center accounting is used to draw internal balance sheets and profit & loss statements. You may use EC-PCA in place of business area accounting.

 [Open table as spreadsheet](#)

Attribute	Profitability Analysis (CO-PA)	Profit Center Accounting (EC-PCA)
Focus	External market segments	Internal responsibility centers
Reporting	Any point of time	During period-end
	Margin reporting	Profit & Loss statements
Accounting	Cost of sales	Period-based

Both CO-PA and EC-PCA serve different purposes, and are not mutually exclusive. You may need them both in your organization.

## 300. Explain ‘Integration of CO’ with its Components and Other SAP Modules.

The CO module is integrated with FI, AA, SD, MM, PP, and HR:

- FI is the main source of data for CO. All expenses, posted in FI, flow to CO through the ‘primary cost elements’ to the appropriate ‘cost centers.’ Similarly, postings in Asset Accounting (such as depreciations) are also passed on to CO.
- Revenue postings in FI would result in postings in CO-PA and also in EC-PCA.



- The SD, MM, and PP modules have many integration points in CO. Goods issue (GI) to a controlling object or goods receipt (GR) from a ‘production order’ are some examples of integration. These modules are tightly integrated as consumption activities, cost of goods issued, overhead charges, material costs, etc., which are passed on to production objects such as PP production order or sales order. The WIP (Work-in-Progress) and the variances, at period ends, are settled to CO-PA, CO-PCA, and also to FI. Revenues are directly posted when you generate billing documents in SD, if the sales order is a cost object item.
- The HR module generates various types of costs to be posted in CO. Planned HR costs can also be passed on for CO planning.

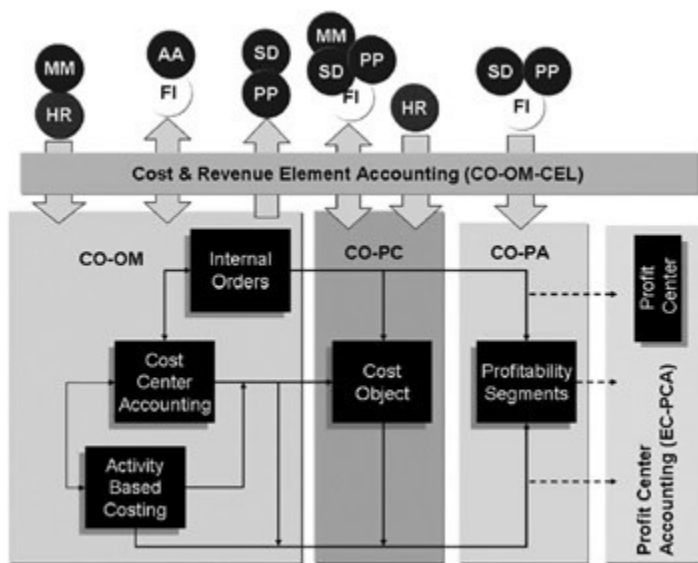


Figure 76: Integration of CO components within and outside CO

The following table illustrates how the various components of CO are integrated:

CO-OM	<b>Overhead Cost Controlling</b>
	External costs can be posted to cost centers/internal orders from other SAP modules.
	Cost centers can then allocate costs to other cost centers, orders, and business

	processes in Activity-Based Costing (ABC).
	Internal orders can settle costs to cost centers, other internal orders, and to business processes in ABC.
	ABC, in turn, can pass on costs to cost centers and orders.
<b>CO-PC</b>	<b>Product Cost Controlling</b>
	Direct postings from FI to cost objects (such as production orders).
	Costs from cost centers can be posted to the production orders as overhead cost allocation.
	Costs settled from internal orders can be passed on to production orders.
<b>CO-PA</b>	<b>Statistical cost postings from all CO components</b>
	Cost assessments from cost centers/ABC.
	Costs settled from internal orders.
	Production variances from CO-PC.



[Open table as spreadsheet](#)

### 301. What is a 'Cost Object'?

A 'Cost Object,' also known as a **CO Account Assignment Object**, in SAP denotes a unit to which you can assign objects. It is something like a repository in which you collect costs, and, if necessary, move the costs from one object to another. All the components of CO have their own cost objects such as cost centers, internal orders, etc.

The cost objects decide the nature of postings as to whether they are real postings or statistical postings. All the objects that are identified as statistical postings are *not* considered cost objects (for example, profit centers).

## **302. Differentiate Between ‘Real’ and ‘Statistical Postings’ in CO.**

The CO account assignment objects decide the type of postings allowed. They can be real or statistical postings.

**‘Real Postings’** allow you to further allocate/settle those costs to any other cost object in CO, either as ‘senders’ or as ‘receivers.’ The objects that are allowed to have real postings include:

- Cost Centers
- Internal Orders (Real)
- Projects (Real)
- Networks
- Profitability Segments
- PP—Production Orders (make-to-order)

**‘Statistical Postings,’** on the other hand, are only for information purposes. You will not be able to further allocate/settle these statistical costs to other cost objects. Examples of such objects include:

- Statistical (Internal) Orders
- Statistical Projects
- Profit Centers

## **303. How do You Define ‘Number Ranges’ in CO?**

You will be required to define, for each of the controlling areas, the **‘Number Ranges’** for all transactions that will generate documents in CO. Once done for a controlling area, you may copy from one controlling area to other controlling areas when you have more than one such area.

To avoid too many documents, SAP recommends grouping multiple but similar transactions, and then assigning number ranges to this group. Further, you may create different number ranges for plan and actual data. As in FI, the number ranges can be **internal** or **external**. The document number ranges in CO are independent of fiscal years.

### 304. How Does ‘Master Data’ Differ from ‘Transaction Data’ in CO?

The ‘**Master Data**’ remain unchanged over a long period, whereas ‘**Transaction Data**’ are short-term. The transaction data are assigned to the master data.

Though you normally create the master data from transactions, note that you will be able to create these records from the configuration side as well. When you need to create a large number of master data, you may use the ‘**collective processing**’ option to create related master records in one step. SAP puts master data in ‘groups’ for easy maintenance.

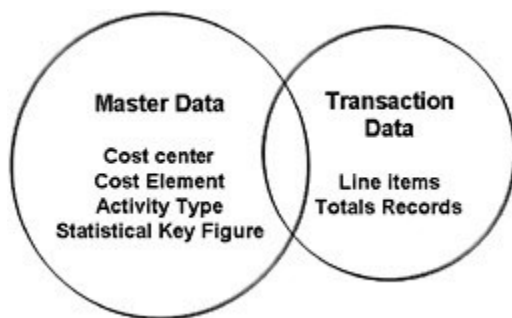


Figure 77: Master and Transaction Data in CO

In the case of master data of cost center/cost elements/activity types, once they are created, you will not be able to change the date. SAP calls this feature the ‘**time dependency**’ of master data. If necessary, you can extend the ‘time’ by creating a new one and attaching it to the existing objects. In the case of **resources**, the master data are time-dependent and the system will allow you to delete these objects.

**Statistical Key Figures (SKF)** are not time-dependent; once defined they are available in the system forever.

### **305. What is a ‘Cost Element’?**

‘**Cost Elements**’ represent the origin of costs. There are two types of cost elements:

- Primary Cost Elements
- Secondary Cost Elements

### **306. What is a ‘Primary Cost Element’?**

‘**Primary Cost Elements**’ represent the consumption of production factors such as raw materials, human resources, utilities, etc. Primary cost elements have their corresponding GL accounts in FI. All the expense/revenue accounts in FI correspond to the primary cost elements in CO. Before you can create the primary cost elements in CO, you first need to create them in FI as GL accounts.

Note that SAP treats **revenue elements** also as primary cost elements in CO processing. The only difference is that all the revenue elements are identified with a negative sign while posting in CO. The revenue elements correspond to the revenue accounts in FI and they fall under the cost element category, category 01/11.

### **307. What is a ‘Secondary Cost Element’?**

‘**Secondary Cost Elements**’ represent the consumption of production factors provided internally by the enterprise itself, and are present only in the CO. They are actually like cost carriers, and are used in **allocations and settlements** in CO. While creating these elements, you need to mention the cost element category, which can be any of the following:

- Category 21, used in **internal settlements**
- Category 42, used in **assessments**
- Category 43, used in **internal activity allocation**

### 308. What is a 'Cost Element Category'?

All the cost elements need to be assigned to a 'Cost Element Category,' to determine the transactions for which you can use the cost elements.

Example:

- Category 01, known as the 'general primary cost elements,' is used in standard primary postings from FI or MM into CO.
- Category 22 is used to settle order/project costs, or cost object costs to objects outside of CO (such as assets, materials, GL accounts, etc.).

### 309. How do you Automatically Create 'Cost Elements'?

You will be able to create 'cost elements' automatically by specifying the cost element, the cost element interval, and the cost element category for the cost elements. All these are achieved by creating **default settings**. The creation of cost elements is done in the background.

**The primary cost elements** can be created only when you have the corresponding GL accounts in the chart of accounts of the Company Code. Even though the GL account names are used as the names of the primary cost elements thus created by the system, you have the option of changing these names in CO. All the **secondary cost elements** are created in CO; the name of these cost elements comes from the cost element category.

## Cost Center Accounting

### 310. Define 'Cost Center Accounting (CO-OM-CCA).'

'Cost Center Accounting (CO-OM-CCA)' helps you to track where costs are incurred in your enterprise. All the costs, such as salary and wages, rent, water charges, etc., incurred are either assigned or posted to a cost center.

### **311. What is a ‘Cost Center’?**

A ‘**Cost Center**’ is an organizational element within a **controlling area**.

You may define cost centers according to your specific needs; the most common approach is to define a cost center for each of the bottom-most organizational units that are supposed to manage their costs. So, typical cost centers could be canteen, telephone, power, human resources, production, etc.

There are other ways of designing cost centers; you may create cost centers representing geographical requirements or responsibility areas or activities/services produced, etc.

After defining individual cost centers, you will assign each one of the cost centers to one of the **cost center categories**. All cost centers of a controlling area are assigned to a **standard hierarchy**.

### **312. What is a ‘Cost Center Category’?**

A ‘**Cost Center Category**’ is an indicator in the cost center master record that identifies what kind of activities a particular cost center performs. SAP comes delivered with default categories such as administration, production, logistics, marketing, development, management, etc. If necessary, as in other cases, you may create your own categories. The categorization is useful for assigning certain standard characteristics to a group of cost centers performing similar activities.

SAP also allows you to store **special indicators** (such as **lock indicators**) for each of the cost center categories. These special indicators serve as defaults when you create a new cost center.

Cost center categories									
CCIC	Name	Qty	ActPri	ActSec	ActRev	PlnPri	PlnSec	PlnRev	Cn
1	Production	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
2	Service cost center	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
3	Sales	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
4	Administration	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
5	Management	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
6	Research & Develop.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
7	Services	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
9	Allocation cost ctr	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
C	Consulting	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
E	Development	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
F	Production	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
G	Logistics	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
H	Service cost center	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
L	Management	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
M	Material	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	

Figure 78: Cost Center Category

### 313. What is a 'Standard Hierarchy'?

A tree-like hierarchy structure grouping all the cost centers (of all the Company Codes belonging to a single controlling area) so defined is known as the '**Standard Hierarchy**' in CO. This is the SAP method of grouping all the cost centers in a controlling area, which helps in analyzing the cost summary at the end of the nodes of the hierarchy (cost center or cost center groups or at the top level). A cost center can be attached to any number of cost center groups, but you cannot assign the same cost center more than once within a cost center group.

Object Manager				
as of: 01.01.2007				
Standard Hierarchy	Name	Activation status	Person responsible	Company code
0001	Standard Hierarchy CO Area 0			
0001-1	Administration			
0001-1-1	Executive			
0001-1-2	General Administration			
0001-2	Logistics			
0001-2-1	Warehouse			
1210	FLAT BEDS	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	XAVIER	0001
0001-2-2	Energy			
0001-2-3	Buildings			
0001-2-4	Vehicles			
0001-3	Production			
0001-3-1	Service Cost Centers			
0001-3-2	Production A			
0001-3-3	Production B			
0001-3-4	Production C			
0001-3-5	Production Management			

Figure 79: Standard Hierarchy Sample

The standard hierarchy helps in easy maintenance of the cost centers/cost center groups for creation of new ones or changing existing ones. It supports drag-drop functionality.



You may use **alternate hierarchies** to group cost centers according to your internal reporting requirements. You can have any number of alternate hierarchies but it is mandatory that you have one standard hierarchy. The alternate hierarchy is also known as the **master data group**.

### **314. Explain Posting of Costs to ‘Cost Centers.’**

When you create accounting transitions in FI/FI-AA/MM, you typically post to one or more GL accounts. While doing so, provided you have already configured in such a way, you also require the user to input the cost center for that transaction, so that when the transaction is posted the values (costs) flow not only to the GL but also to CO to the appropriate cost center. The system will create two posting documents: one for FI and another for CO.

Additionally, you will also be able to post non-financial information such as direct labor hours from HR or PP modules to cost centers in CO.

### **315. What is an ‘Activity Type’?**

‘**Activity Type**’ helps you do define the service/action (for example, human labor, machine labor, repair hours, etc.) performed or provided by a cost center. It forms the ‘basis’ for allocating costs to other cost centers or internal orders, etc. You may assign an activity type to an operation so that they are reflected in PP; a CO document is created with the costs of the operation allocated from the cost center that produced the operation to a production order, when the operation is completed in PP.


You may group activity types into **activity type groups** for easy maintenance.

You need to arrive at the **activity price**, which needs to be attached to that particular activity type for planning or recording the actual. The activity price is calculated by dividing the total costs by the total planned/actual activity quantity (hours, units, etc.).

It is not necessary that all the cost centers have activity types associated with them. If there is no output from a cost center, then there will be no activity type for that cost center.

### **316. Where do You Assign Activity Type in Cost Centers?**

There is no direct assignment. You plan the output for a cost center first by using **Transaction KP26**. Then, plan the value of that cost center with the budget for a period in **Transaction KP06**. ‘Planned Activity expenditure’/‘Planned Activity Quantity’ gives the ‘planned activity rate,’ which you can use to value your activity confirmations in manufacturing orders. You can also define your activity prices on your own, but you have to run the ‘price revaluation’ if you want to revalue your actual activity prices.

	Transaction Code
	<b>KP26</b> <b>KP06</b>

### **317. What is a ‘Resource’ in CO?**

‘**Resources**’ are goods/services, consumed by CO objects such as cost center/internal order/WBS element, which are supplied (internally or externally) to an organization in order to produce business activities. The resources are used only in planning and not for tracking the actual.

There are three types of resources:

- Type **B** (used in base planning object)
- Type **M** (refers to a material)
- Type **R** (exists only in CO-OM)

### 318. What is a ‘Statistical Key Figure’ (SKF)?

The ‘Statistical Key Figure (SKF)’ is used as the basis (**tracing factor**) for making allocations (**assessments/distributions**). They are the statistical data such as number of employees, area in square meters, etc. You will make use of a SKF when you are faced with a situation where it is not possible to use any other conventional method or measure to arrive at the share of costs to be allocated to cost centers.

Suppose that you are incurring a monthly expense of USD 5,000 in the cost center cafeteria, the cost of which needs to be allocated to other cost centers. You can achieve this by the SKF. Imagine that you want this to be allocated based on the ‘number of employees’ working in each of the other cost centers such as administrative office (50 employees) and the factory (200 employees). You will now use the number of employees as the SKF for allocating the costs. The following illustration helps you to understand how SKF is used:

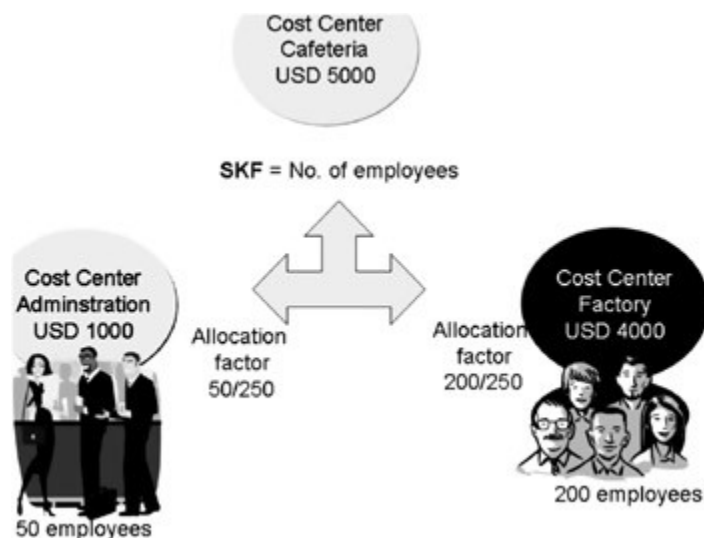


Figure 80: Statistical Key Figure



In SKF allocation, you have the flexibility of using two different **SKF Categories**; namely, **Total value or Fixed value**. You will use fixed values in situations where the SKF does not change very often, as in the case of the number of employees, area, etc. You will use total values in situations where the value is expected to change every now and then, as in the case of power use or water consumption and the like.

### **319. Explain the 'Planning' steps in CO-OM-CCA.**

The three steps involved in planning in cost center accounting include:

- Configuration required for planning
  - Configure a **Plan Version**
  - Create or Copy **Plan Layouts**
  - Create **Plan Profile**
  - Insert Plan Layouts into Plan Profile
- Inputting the planned data
- Completing the planning activity

### **320. What is a 'Plan Version'?**

A **'Plan Version'** is a collection of planning data. The version controls whether the user will maintain plan data or actual data or both. You may create as many versions as you need, though SAP provides you with the necessary versions in the standard system.

Each version has information stored in the system per fiscal year period. The version '000' is automatically created for a period horizon of five years, and is normally the final version as this allows for storing actual information as well. You will be using the data in version '000' for all the planned activity price calculation. Once planning is completed, you need to 'lock' that version so that no one will be able to modify the plan data.

## 321. What is 'Integrated Planning' in CO-OM-CCA?

'Integrated Planning' helps you to transfer data from other SAP modules such as PP, HR, FI-AA, etc. If you have planned data in these modules and just transfer these into CO, without making any changes, then you do not need plan again in cost center accounting. Before using integrated planning, you need to activate the integration in the planning menu.

Note that integrated planning is possible only when there has been no data planned on that version before activating the integrated planning.

## 322. Explain 'Plan Layout.'

A 'Plan Layout' is nothing but a data entry screen or template that you use to input plan data.

In most situations, it would be more than sufficient to use SAP supplied planning layouts; however, you may create your own by copying one of the existing layouts and altering it with the help of report painter. While creating a custom layout, note that you have the flexibility to create up to nine **lead columns** (giving the details the nature of the data associated with the value columns), and any number of **value columns** (plan data such as amount, unit, etc., corresponding to the lead column).

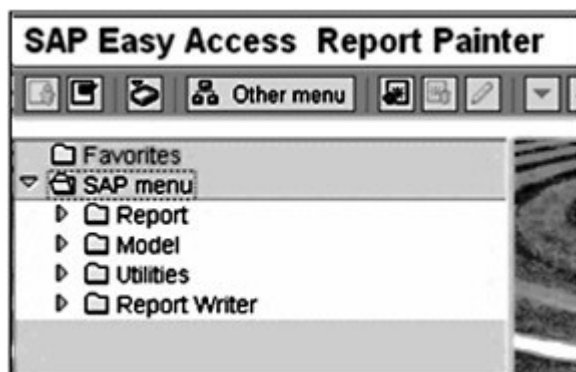


Figure 81: Report Painter

You also have the option of using MS-Excel spreadsheets as the data input screen in lieu of the SAP plan layouts; but to achieve this you need to activate the ‘integrating with Excel option’ while assigning the layout(s) to a planner profile in IMG.

You need to define a plan layout for each of the three planning areas in CO, namely:

- i. Primary Cost and Activity Inputs
- ii. Activity Output/Prices
- iii. Statistical Key Figures

### **323. Explain a ‘Plan Profile.’**

A ‘**Plan Profile**’ (or **Planning Profile**) helps in controlling the whole process of planning by logically grouping the various plan layouts together. It determines the timeline for planning. You can have more than one planning layout per plan profile.

Before you actually start inputting the data, you need to set the plan profile so that the system knows what layout needs to be used for the planning exercise.

### **324. How do You Copy ‘Plan Data’ from one period to another?**

SAP allows you to copy planning data, created manually earlier, from one fiscal year to the other or from one period to a different period within the same fiscal year. You have the option of copying existing plan data to a future period as new plan data or copying actual data from one period to another as plan data.

### **325. What is the recommended Planning Sequence, in CO?**

SAP recommends three steps in the planning. In all three steps, the planning can be carried out **manually or automatically**. You may use assessment, distribution, and indirect activity allocation or inputted costs for planning. You can also have **centralized planning** (cost element planning for all the cost centers) and **decentralized planning** (planning for individual cost centers) in your organization.

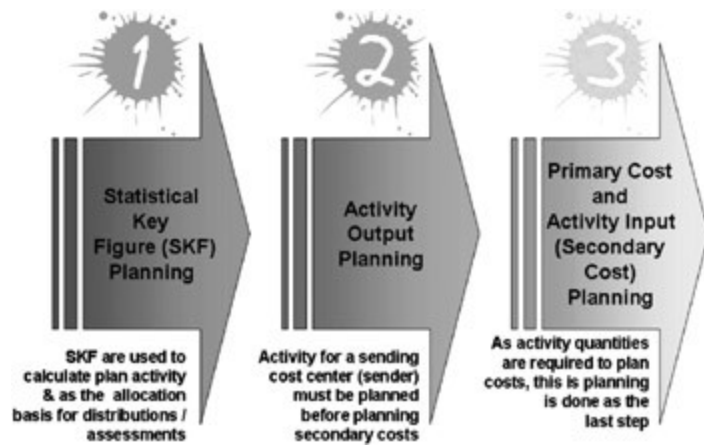


Figure 82: Planning Sequence for Cost Center Accounting

### 326. What are the two options for entering Plan Data?

SAP provides you with a choice of two options to enter your plan data. You may use **Form-based entry** or **Free entry**.

In **form-based entry**, all you need to do is fill in the plan data in the rows corresponding to the characteristic values (cost centers, cost element, etc.) displayed on the screen. But, in **free entry**, you have the freedom of inputting even the characteristic values.

### 327. What are 'Distribution Keys'?

The SAP system uses '**Distribution Keys**' to distribute planned values across various periods. With the standard distribution keys supplied by SAP, you will be able to achieve the type of distribution you need:

- **DK1** (equal distribution)
- **DK2** (distribution as done earlier)
- **DK5** (copy values to period where there is no value)

For example, if you have a planned annual value of 12,000, by using **DK1** you will be able to distribute 1,000 each as the monthly values. If you had plan values for last year which were something like 1,000 for January to June, 500 for July, 1,500 for

August, and 1,000 each for September to December, then by using **DK2**, you will be able to copy the same amounts to the next fiscal year. **DK5** will copy values to future periods only if there are no values already available for those periods.

### **328. Differentiate ‘Activity-Dependent’ and ‘Activity-Independent’ Costs.**

As you might be aware of already, there are two types of costs; namely, **variable costs** and **fixed costs**.

**Variable Costs**, such as material costs, factory labor, etc., are always dependent on an activity, and will vary depending on the activity. The higher the activity the more will be the expenditure towards variable costs. In short, these costs are directly proportional to the level of activity. In SAP CO, these costs are known as ‘**Activity-Dependent Costs**.’

In contrast to the variable costs, ‘**Activity-Independent Costs**’ or **fixed costs** do not usually vary with the level of activity. And you may need to incur these costs irrespective of whether there is an activity. Costs such as costs towards security, insurance premiums, etc., fall under the category of fixed costs.

### **329. What is a ‘Mixed Cost’?**

There are instances where you will come across a costing situation where the costs cannot be strictly segregated into either fixed or variable costs. These costs are known as **semi-fixed costs** or **semi-variable costs** or **mixed costs**, because a portion of the total costs is fixed and the remaining portion is a variable cost.

The classic example is the charges for electricity in a production environment, where there is a basic minimum charge payable to the electricity provider (or towards heating requirements of the buildings) which remains fixed whether there is some production activity or not. When there is production, you will use more electricity, which varies with the level of production.



### **330. Explain ‘Manual Primary Cost Planning.’**

‘**Manual Primary Cost Planning**’ is used to plan for costs associated with the external procurement of goods and services. You will plan both fixed and variable costs, and also mixed costs, if necessary. You will plan costs such as salaries, wages, etc., as activity-dependent costs; the costs towards security, etc., will be planned as activity-independent costs.

You need to note that planning fixed primary costs is not vastly different from that of planning for variable primary costs. When you plan for the variable primary costs you need to mention the activity type associated with that. You may further break down this cost into fixed and variable proportions. The ‘fixed primary costs’ or ‘activity-independent primary costs’ are planned using the primary cost elements on various cost centers, based on the activity performed on a particular cost center.

You may use any of the following SAP supplied planning layouts:

- **1–101**— Activity-independent or activity-dependent primary costs
- **1–103**— Activity-independent costs
- **1–152**— Activity-independent costs (on a quarterly basis)
- **1–153**— Cost-element planning (two versions simultaneously)
- **1–154**— Cost-element planning (previous year’s actual displayed in the lead column)
- **1–156**— Central planning (Cost element planning from Cost center perspective)

### **331. Explain ‘Automatic Primary Cost Planning.’**

SAP provides you with two ways of handling **Primary Costs Planning**; namely:

- Inputted Costs Calculation
- Distribution

**Inputted Costs Calculation** is used to smooth one-time costs (bonus, incentives, etc.) incurred by spreading them over a period of time though it is posted on the FI side at the end of the year. You again have two methods of processing these costs: (i) when there is no corresponding costs equivalent on the FI side such as the inputted family labor or inputted rent, etc., and (ii) when there is a corresponding cost equivalent on the FI side such as festival bonus, etc.

**Distribution** helps in planning primary costs from one cost center to the other. The cost center from where the costs are distributed is known as the **sender** (or **pooled cost center** or **clearing cost center**) and the other cost centers to which the costs are distributed or where the costs are received are known as **receivers**.

Note that you will be able to distribute planned/actual primary costs only. Also note that the pooled cost center does not incur any of these costs but acts only as the ‘clearing center’ for distribution to other cost centers. During the process, you will use the SKF or the regular percentage method as the **distribution rule** for achieving the distribution. The **distribution cycle** helps to carry out the whole planning exercise.

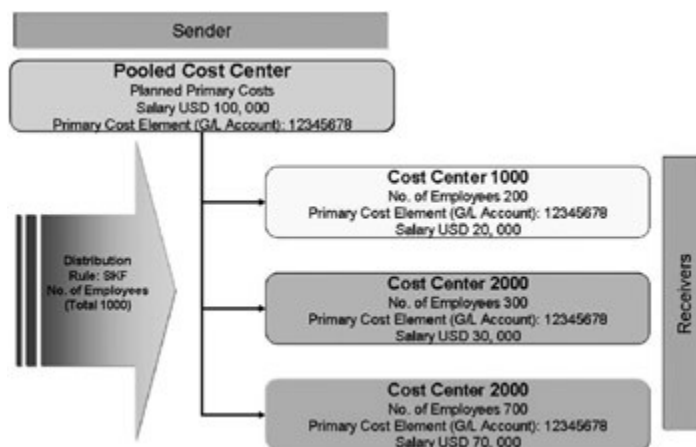


Figure 83: Distribution (Automatic Primary Costs Planning)

### **332. Explain ‘Manual Secondary Cost Planning.’**

‘**Manual Secondary Cost Planning**’ is required when you need to plan consumption quantities of a sender cost center’s planned activity from the point of view of the receiving cost center. The activity inputs may be planned either as the activity-dependent costs (variable) or as activity-independent costs (fixed).

The ‘activity-dependent primary cost planning’ is used only when you need the services such as repair hours on a specified activity type. On the other hand, you will use ‘activity-independent primary cost planning’ when you need services such as maintenance hours, which are not restricted to a particular activity.

The system uses the ‘planned calculated activity price’ for posting the secondary cost. It is possible to carry out ‘manual secondary cost planning’ for activity types categorized as Category-1 (manual entry/manual allocation). Note that it is important that you perform reconciliation of planned consumption of an activity at the receiver cost center to the volume planned at the sender’s level; otherwise, you will get a warning message when the system calculates the activity price.

### **333. Explain ‘Assessment’ in Secondary Cost Planning.**

‘**Assessment**’ is one of the methods used in ‘automatic planning of secondary costs’ in cost center accounting. You will typically use this method when you need to allocate costs from one cost center to other cost centers. The original costs, even if they are primary, from the cost center are grouped and reclassified as secondary while allocating the same to other cost centers (imagine that you are collecting primary costs such as postage, telephone, courier expenses, fax charges, etc., into a cost center called 1000, now group these costs for assessment using a secondary cost element to receiver cost centers: 2000 and 3000).

You need to define an **assessment rule** (either ‘percentage’ or ‘SKFs’ or ‘fixed amounts’) for affecting assessment. You would have now noticed that this is similar to the distribution used in ‘primary cost planning.’

So, why do you need an assessment? Assessment is required when you need to allocate secondary costs, and when you do not need the details you would otherwise get from distribution.

### 334. What is an 'Allocation Structure'?

You need to define or use a secondary cost element, called the 'assessment cost element,' while you carry out the 'assessment' in 'automatic secondary cost planning.' Instead of defining individual assessment elements (for a group of primary cost elements) in individual segments, every now and then, you may define various assessment elements in an '**Allocation Structure**,' and use them repeatedly.

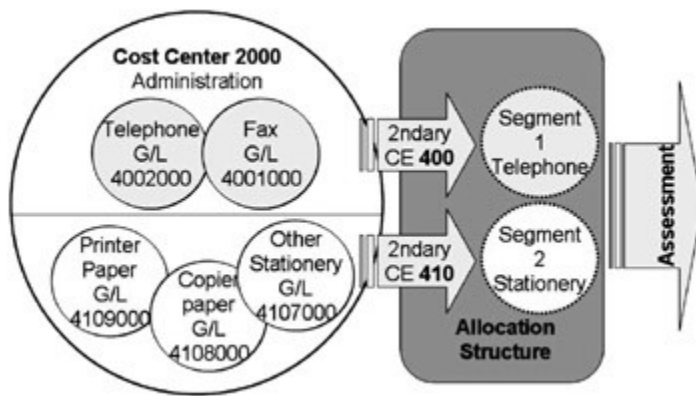


Figure 84: Assessment (Automatic Secondary Cost Planning)

### 335. Explain 'Segments' and 'Cycles.'

A '**Segment**' is one processing unit required to complete an automated allocation of distribution or assessment or reposting of planned/actual costs in controlling in SAP. A segment is made up of (a) allocation characteristics—to identify the sender/receiver, (b) values of the sender—plan/actual, type of costs to be allocated, and (c) values of the receiver—the basis for allocation, for example, the **tracing factor** such as SKF, percentages, etc.

When you combine multiple segments into a single process, then you call that the '**Cycle**.' A Cycle helps you to process various segments in a chain-like fashion one after another. A Cycle consists of header data (valid for all Segments in a Cycle) and

one or more Segments, with summarized rules and settings enabling allocation. The Segments within a 'cycle' can be processed iteratively (one segment waits for the results of another) or non-iteratively (all the segments are processed independently) or cumulatively (to take care of variations in receiver Tracing Factors or sender amounts).

Typically, when you start the cycles you will start them in a 'test' mode to see the allocations before actual postings. Technically, you can run the cycles in 'production' mode at any point of time, but the system will carry out the allocation postings only on the first day of a period. The utility of the cycle lies in the fact that you can run these period after period.

### **336. What is 'Iterative Processing' of Cycles?**

'**Iterative Processing**' is nothing but the repetitive processing of sender/receiver relationships until the sender's entire cost is transferred to the receiver(s). During iterative processing, you will not be able to use 'fixed amounts' as the 'sender rules'; you will also not be able to define a percentage to remain on the sender. You will be able to use both plan and actual data while using the iteration.

### **337. What is 'Splitting'? Explain the 'Splitting Structure.'**

'**Splitting**' is a process used to assign 'activity-independent' plans/actual costs, both primary and secondary, of a cost center to the individual activity types within that cost center. But the important requirement is that you will use this when there is no account assignment to the activity types.

You may either use the **Splitting rules** or the **Equivalence number** to achieve this. When you split the costs from a cost center, the cost center temporarily becomes more than one cost center for the purpose of allocation but again becomes a single cost center when posting happens in the subsequent period.

If you need to assign different cost elements or cost element groups to activities in more than one way, then you need to define a '**Splitting Structure**' containing

‘splitting rules’ to determine the criteria of splitting ‘activity-independent’ costs to an activity type. If you have created the splitting structure in customizing and assigned the same to a cost center, then the system uses the splitting structure for cost apportioning; otherwise, it will use the equivalence number.

The ‘**splitting rules**’ determine the amount or the proportion of costs to be allocated to various activity types of a cost center and is based on the consumption of these activity types. The costs thus allocated may be a fixed sum, or a percentage, or it can even be based on the tracing factors or SKFs.

The ‘**equivalence number**’ is a basic method for splitting the costs when you manually plan for each of the activity types. By this, you will plan all activity-independent costs according to the equivalence numbers (the default is 1).

### **338. What is an ‘Activity Price Calculation’?**

You will be completing the planning process only when you perform the ‘**Activity Price Calculation,**’ which is based on planned activities and costs. By doing this you are valuating the planned secondary costs at receiving cost centers. If you do not want to use activity price thus calculated, you are free to use the **political price** for the activity type.

As you are aware, the activity price is used for planned/actual allocation and is determined by using either the political price or the system-calculated activity price.

### **339. How does the System Calculate the ‘Activity Price’?**

The system calculates the ‘**Activity Price,**’ for each activity type and cost center, by following the underlying rule:

$$\text{Planned Activity Price} = \frac{\text{Planned Primary Costs} + \text{Planned Secondary Costs}}{\text{Planned Activity Type Volume}}$$

Note that the system will continue to calculate the activity price even if you have set the price indicator of an activity type to the ‘**political price.**’

### **340. What is known as the ‘Political Price’ for an Activity Type?**

The ‘**Political Price**’ is the price determined outside the SAP system, which is used in manual input using the required planning layout in planning.

### **341. What is ‘Allocation Price Variance’?**

‘**Allocation Price Variance**’ is the difference between the ‘political price’ of an activity type and the ‘system calculated activity price’ of the same activity type.

### **342. What is ‘Budgeting’?**

‘Budgeting’ is used to augment the planning process at the cost-center level. While planning is considered the ‘**bottom-up**’ approach, budgeting is regarded as the ‘**top-down**’ method to control costs.

Budgeting usually comes ‘down’ from the ‘top (management)’ and is used to guide the planning process at the cost-center level. Note that budgeting is *not* integrated with postings; you will get an error when the system comes across a posting that will result in the actual values exceeding the budget for that cost center.

### **343. What are the ‘Direct Allocation’ Methods of Posting in CO?**

The ‘**Direct Allocation**’ of posting in CO may be an actual cost entry or a transaction-based posting.

The **actual cost entry** is the transfer of primary costs from FI to CO, on a real-time basis, through the primary cost elements. You may also transfer transaction data by making the cost accounting assignment to cost objects from other modules such as FI-AA, SD, and MM:

- FI-AA: Assign assets to a cost center (to post depreciation, etc.)
- MM: Assign GR to a cost center/internal order

- SD: Assign or settle a sales order to a cost center or internal order

Note that during actual cost entry, the system creates two documents. When you post the primary costs from FI to CO, the system will create a document in FI and a parallel document in CO, which is summarized from the point of the cost object/element.

**Transaction-based postings** are executed within the CO, again on a real-time basis, enabling you to have updated cost information on the cost centers at any point in time. You will be able to carry out the following transaction-based postings in CO:

- Reposting
  - Line items
  - Transactions
- Manual cost allocation
- Direct activity allocation
- Posting of Statistical Key Figures
- Posting of sender activities

### **344. What is the ‘Indirect Allocation’ Method of Postings in CO?**

The **‘Indirect Allocation’** of postings in CO may be used at the end of a period as a periodic allocation. This is done after you have completed all the primary postings. You may post the following periodic allocations using indirect allocation:

- Periodic Reposting
- Distribution
- Assessment
- Accrual Cost Calculation (Inputted Cost Calculation)
- Indirect Activity Allocation



### 345. Explain 'CO Automatic Account Assignment.'

For transferring primary costs to CO, on a real-time basis, you need to have '**Automatic Account Assignments**' defined in the system. By doing this, you will always be able to post a particular cost to a specified cost center. You can also use this assignment for automatically posting the exchange rate differences (gain or loss), discount, etc., to CO.

You may also have additional account assignment at different levels such as:

- Controlling area/account/Company Code in the customizing
- Controlling area/account/cost element in the master record
- Controlling area/account/Company Code/business area/valuation area in customizing

The system always goes through the route of customizing first, then to the cost element master record while accessing the account assignment rules.

### 346. How does 'Validation' differ from 'Substitution'?

SAP uses validations and substitutions to check the integrity of data entered before posting a document. When you have both substitutions and validations defined, the system first completes the substitution then goes on to validate the entries. Note that only one validation and one substitution can be activated at a time for a controlling area per '**call-up point**.'

A '**Validation**' uses Boolean logic for **checking** any type of combination of specified criteria (such as account type/cost center combination) for ensuring the validity before allowing you to post a document.

Example:

- **Validation Rule:** If the cost element is '120000,' then the cost center is '1200.'

- **Document:** You try posting a document containing the cost element as '120000' and the cost center is '1400.'
- **System Response:** The system will throw an 'error message' after checking that the cost center value does not match the cost center value of the criteria for that given cost element value.

In contrast to validation which just checks for validity, **substitution** ensures that the system replaces a value assigned to one or more fields based on predetermined criteria, using, again, '**Boolean logic**.'

Example:

- **Substitution Rule:** If the cost element is '120000,' then the cost center is '1200.'
- **Document:** You try posting a document containing the cost element as '120000' and the cost center as '1400.'
- **System Response:** The system will replace the entered cost center value of '1400' with that of the correct value '1200.'

### **347. What is a 'Call-up Point'?**

A '**Call-up Point**' is a particular point in transaction processing that triggers an action such as substitution or validation.

### **348. What is 'Boolean Logic'?**

'**Boolean Logic**' is based on simple logic to determine if a given statement is true or false. The logic works on the basic principle that a statement can either be true or false. In a complex statement (created using operators 'and'/'or'/'nor,' etc.) with many parts, the logic goes by assigning true or false from part to part, and then determines at the end whether the combination is true or false.

### **349. Explain 'Reposting' in Cost Center Accounting.**

'**Reposting**' is one of the 'transaction-based postings' in Cost Center Accounting used to reallocate costs that were incorrectly posted to another cost center earlier. Also called **internal reposting**, there are two types:

- Line Item Reposting
- Transaction Reposting

Use **Line Item Reposting** only when a certain line item, from the original posting, needs to be reposted. Under this reposting, at the end of the transaction, the system creates a new CO document, but keeps the original FI document unchanged. In the new CO document created, the original FI number is referenced.

You will resort to the entire **Transaction Reposting** when the original posting was incorrect. Here, the original FI documents are not referenced to in the new CO document created, though the original FI document remains unchanged.

### **350. Is 'Periodic Reposting' Different from 'Reposting'?**

'**Periodic Reposting**,' a method under 'indirect allocation,' is used to correct multiple postings made to cost centers during a particular period. As such, this is similar to **multiple reposting** under 'transaction-based postings.'

Periodic reposting is also similar to **distribution**, when you use this, at the period end, to transfer all costs from a 'pooled cost center' to other receivers. (Note that the 'distribution' is meant primarily for cost allocation, but periodic reposting is meant for correcting the posting errors.)

### **351. Explain 'Manual Cost Allocation.'**

'**Manual Cost Allocation**'—one of the 'transaction-based postings'—is used to post both primary and secondary actual costs (*not* the planned costs), and also to transfer external data. You may also use this to correct secondary costs that were incorrectly posted earlier. In the process of manual cost allocation, remember that you can use

any type of cost element except 43, as this is meant exclusively for activity allocation.

You may use this among cost centers, internal orders, networks, network activities, sales orders, sales order items, WBS elements, etc., identifying these cost objects as senders/receivers.

### **352. What is ‘Direct Activity Allocation’?**

‘**Direct Activity Allocation**’—one of the ‘transaction-based postings’—is used to record activities performed by a cost center and to allocate simultaneously to ‘receiving cost centers.’ You will use this ‘direct activity allocation’ only when you know the activity volumes of both the sender and the receiver. If not known, then use the **indirect activity allocation** at the period end.

You need to input the activity quantity, sender/receiver cost center and date to enable the system to allocate the costs; the system will automatically determine the **allocation cost element** and the **activity price** (either the planned price or the actual price). The system multiplies the activity consumed with that of the activity price to arrive at the allocated cost.

### **353. How do You Calculate ‘Accrued Costs’?**

SAP provides two methods for calculating the **Inputted** or **Accrued Costs** in CO:

- Target=Actual method
- Cost Element Percent method

### **354. Describe the ‘Reconciliation Ledger.’**

The ‘**Reconciliation Ledger**’ is used to keep track of all cross-Company Code transactions between FI and CO, as there is every chance that there may be some imbalance between the CO totals and FI totals when more than one Company Code is attached to a controlling area. This is because you may try to allocate costs from one cost center to another assigned to a different Company Code.

The reconciliation ledger records the Company Code, business area, functional area, amount, cost objects, cost element, currency (Company Code and controlling area), etc. You can make reconciliation postings at the end of a period to synchronize FI and CO with the configuration settings to automatically post the differences to FI.

While configuring the reconciliation ledger, you may use **extended account assignments** besides the normal account assignment for automatic transfer of reconciled postings. The extended account assignment helps make more comprehensive assignments to the relevant reconciliation accounts, with the option and flexibility of specifying any field in the reconciliation ledger (Company Code, cost element, functional area, etc.) for checking the ‘substitution rules.’

To aid in determining possible reconciliation postings, you can opt for selecting individual cost flows from all the relevant cost flows. This is accomplished by running the relevant report and looking for the relevant ‘data block’ (such as total cost flows, basic overview list, and detailed list).

### **355. What is ‘Variance Analysis’ in CO-OM-CCA?**

‘**Variance Analysis**’ is the determination and interpretation of the difference(s) between the actual and planned (target) costs (within a cost center/cost center group) in cost center accounting. The analysis is intended to provide important clues to top management to plan better later.

### **356. What are the ‘Categories of Variances’ in CO-OM-CCA?**

SAP helps to classify all variances into two categories:

- Input Variance
- Output Variance

### 357. Explain the 'Input Variance.'

The '**Input Variance**' is the result of the mismatch of amounts/quantities of inputs planned and actually used. You will be able to identify the following **input side variances** in the system:

- **Quantity variance**—when there is a difference between planned and actual quantity of activity consumption. The inference is that there is some production inefficiency leading to more consumption or there is some loss/shrinkage in the quantities.
- **Price variance**—when there is a difference between the planned and actual price of an activity. The inference will be that you may need to change the suppliers looking for lower prices or it is just a market condition.
- **Resource (use) variance**—when there is use of an unplanned cost element or there has not been a posting of a planned cost element. The inference is that there are some unidentified costs that may be planned in the next planning cycle, or just plain errors in postings.
- **Remaining (input) variance**—these are all miscellaneous variances where the system is not able to categorize a variance.

### 358. What is an 'Output Variance'?

An '**Output Variance**' is the result when the actual costs allocated from a cost center differ from the planned (or target) cost allocation from the cost center. The variances on the 'output side' may be any one of the following:

- **Volume variance**—this variance occurs with actual and planned activities (in terms of activity quantity and/or the activity itself). It can arise in either or both situations described below:
  - $\text{Volume variance} = \text{Plan Activity Cost} - (\text{Actual Activity Quantity} * \text{Planned Activity Price})$

- Volume variance=Plan Activity Price\*(Planned Activity Quantity—Actual Activity Quantity)
- **Output price variance**—this variance occurs when the activity price used in the actual allocation is a political activity price (manually entered or plan price) differing from the system calculated activity price (target price).
- **Output quantity variance**—this kind of variance occurs only on the actual side, when there is a difference between the actual activity quantity (manually entered in the sender cost center, and the actual activity quantity allocated from that sender cost center.
- **Remaining variance**—this reflects the miscellaneous variance, at the cost center level, identified by the system on the output side but remains not categorized into any of the above three types. The possible reason can be that you have deactivated the output variances in the variance variant configuration or the output variance is less than the ‘minor difference’ you have defined in the ‘variance variant.’

### 359. How do You Deal with ‘Variances’?

Though the system identifies and calculates variances, they are not automatically dealt with by the system. Hence, these variances will remain at the cost center as a **period-end balance** and you need to act on that in one of the following ways:

- You may do actual activity price calculation to revalue all internal allocations with a newly calculated price (as against the initial planned activity price), and post the difference to all the cost centers which initially received the allocations. This will help you in clearing all or a portion of output price variances.
- You may ‘transfer’ the variance balance to other modules (such as CO-PA) for further analysis.

- You may make additional automated allocations within CO-OM-CCA to one or more cost center.

### 360. What are All the ‘Standard Reports’ in CO?

SAP comes delivered with a number of ‘Standard Reports’ in the CO module. The reports are grouped under:

- Planning reports
- Comparison reports
- Line item reports

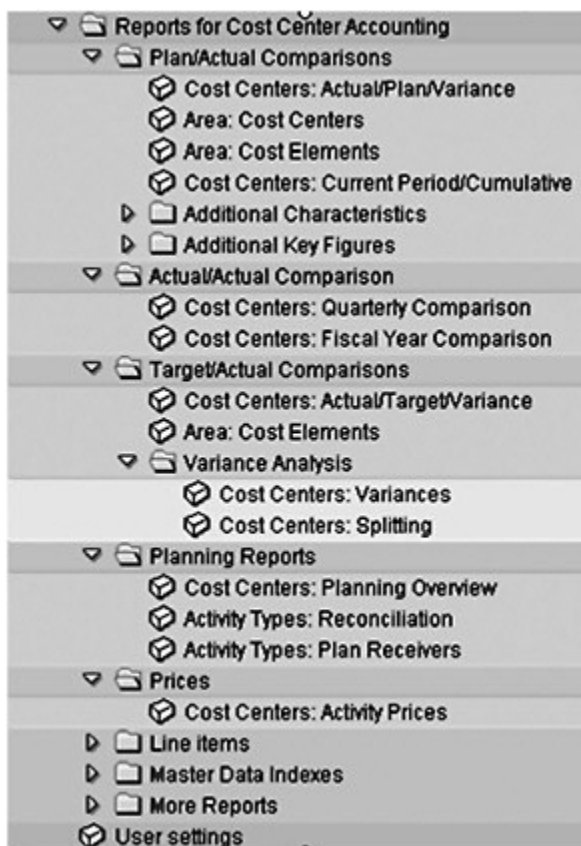


Figure 85: Report Tree in CO

- Report for activity prices
- Reports for variance analysis
- Master data reports



- Document display

All the reports are arranged in a '**report tree**' with a hierarchical arrangement of reports under various nodes. Note that you will not be able to change the standard report tree supplied by SAP; if you need to you can copy it, define your own reports, and then attach these newly defined ones to the new report tree you just defined.

### **361. What is 'Summarization' in CO?**

'**Summarization**' helps to condense and store the transaction data at the 'cost center group' level. You may do the summarization for the highest node of the standard hierarchy or any of the 'alternate hierarchies.' Once summarized, you will be able to create a vast number of reports with report run-time vastly reduced as all the data of the nodes are readily available from the summarized table.

## **Internal Orders**

### **362. What is an 'Internal Order'?**

An '**Internal Order**' is a cost object used mainly for recording costs associated with certain events taking place within the company. The events are unique such as marketing campaigns, repairs, trade exhibitions etc. Unlike the cost centers where you typically post only the costs, you will be able to post both cost and revenue information to internal orders. You can plan, monitor, collect, and settle costs/revenue on internal orders.

The internal orders can be classified as a **Single order/Individual order** or a **Standing order**. The orders can also be a **Real internal order** or a **Statistical internal order**.

### **363. How does an 'Individual Order' differ from a 'Standing Order'?**

An '**Individual (Internal) Order**' is meant for collecting and settling costs of a one-time and unique business activity such as a new product launch. You will be settling

the order in full at the end of the activity. Typically, this type of order is used for advertising campaigns, R & D costs, assets produced in-house, etc.

A '**Standing (Internal) Order**' on the other hand, is used in the case of repetitive operations, the costs of which are generally smaller compared to one-time orders. You will settle the costs and form these orders on a 'periodic basis' (say, at the end of every month) and will keep the order open to receive future costs. You will use this type of order for tracking costs on routine maintenance, telephone use charges, etc. These orders do away with the need to create a new order every time you need such a tracking; they are similar to standing instructions.

### **364. What are the 'Groups' of Internal Orders?**

**Internal Orders** can be grouped into the following categories/groups:

- **Overhead orders**

Associated with monitoring of overhead costs incurred for a specific purpose such as tracking repair work, painting the factory, conducting an exhibition, etc. Overhead cost orders are used only in the CO area.

- **Investment orders**

Tracking the costs incurred on fixed assets (assets under construction) such as construction of a warehouse, etc. These are also called **capital investment orders**.

- **Accrual orders**

You will use accrual orders when you need to make an offsetting posting of accrued costs to a cost center in CO.

- **Orders with revenue**

These orders help you carry out cost accounting functionality of SAP SD (customer orders) when you have not implemented the SD module. By doing this, you will be able to track costs and revenues.

### 365. How do 'Statistical Internal Orders' Differ from 'Real Orders'?

A 'Statistical Internal Order' is used to collect costs for the purpose of information and reporting, as the costs 'collected' on this order are never settled to a cost object. When you want to create such an order, you will be required to specify that the order is 'statistical' in its master record. However, to make a posting to this kind of order, you need to have a 'real' or 'true' cost object specified during the transaction.

A 'Real Internal Order' is always used to settle costs to other cost objects. So, even if you specify a real cost object while making a posting to a real order, the system will consider that cost object a statistical one as the internal order itself is a real cost object.

### Sales & Distribution (SD)

Depicted below is the broad organizational structure of logistics, which will help you understand how the various units of SD as well as MM modules are linked to FI:

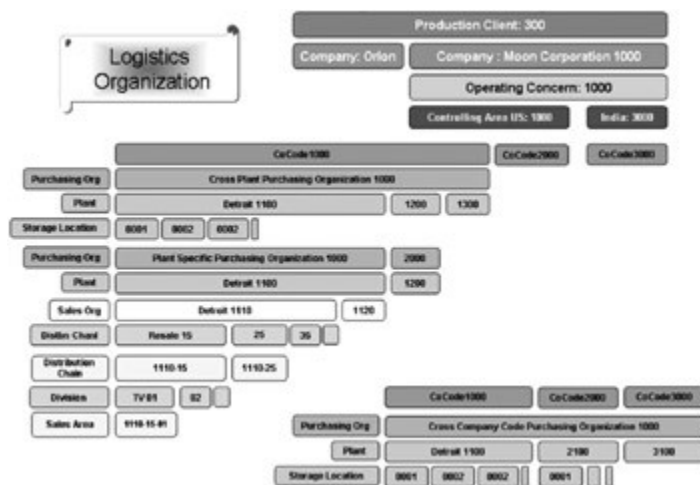


Figure 86: Logistics organizational structure in SAP

### 366. What are the Components of the SAP SD Module?

The important **Components** in SAP Sales & Distribution module include:

- Master data

- Basic functions
- Sales (including foreign sales and sales support)
- Shipping and transportation
- Billing
- Sales support
- Information systems

### 367. What are the Important Organizational Elements of SAP SD?

The important **Organizational Elements** in SAP Sales & Distribution include:

- Sales organization
- Distribution channel
- Division
- Sales area
- Sales group
- Sales person

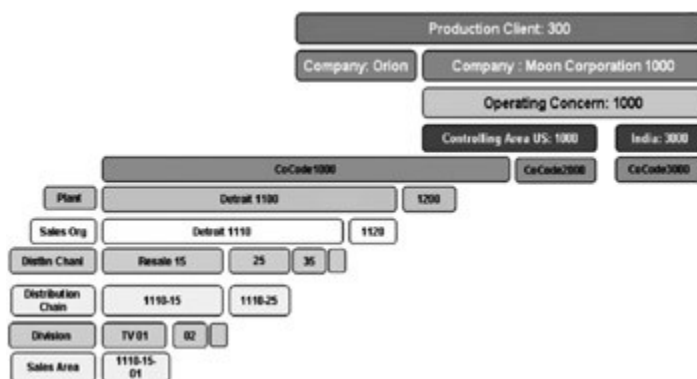


Figure 87: SD Organizational Structure

### **368. Explain the ‘Sales Organization.’ How it is Assigned to a ‘Plant’?**

The ‘Sales Organization’ is the top-most organizational element in SD. It represents and takes care of all the transactions relating to the selling and distribution of products or services. A distribution channel is assigned to one or more sales organization. The customer master can be maintained with different sales organization views.

The sales organization, identified by a 4-character code, is assigned to one or more plants. These plants are, in turn, assigned to a Company Code. So, it follows that any number of **sales areas** can be brought under a single Company Code.

Even though it is possible that you may have any number of sales organizations, it is recommended that you have a minimum number of these units in your setup. Ideal recommendation is for a single sales organization per Company Code. If you are selling the same product or service from more than one sales organization, then there is a clear indication that you have more sales organizations defined than what would ideally be required.

### **369. What is a ‘Distribution Channel’?**

A ‘Distribution Channel’ depicts the channel through which the products or services reach the customers after they are sold (for example, wholesale, retail, direct sales, etc.). Represented by a 2-digit identifier, the distribution channel is assigned to one or more **sales areas**. As a result, one customer may be serviced through more than one distribution channel. Such as in a sales organization, the customer master data may have different distribution channel views.

### **370. What is a ‘Distribution Chain’?**

A ‘Distribution Chain’ represents the possible combinations of **sales organization(s) and distribution channel(s)**. In Figure 89, Detroit 1110-Resale 15 forms a distribution channel and is normally denoted ‘1110–15.’

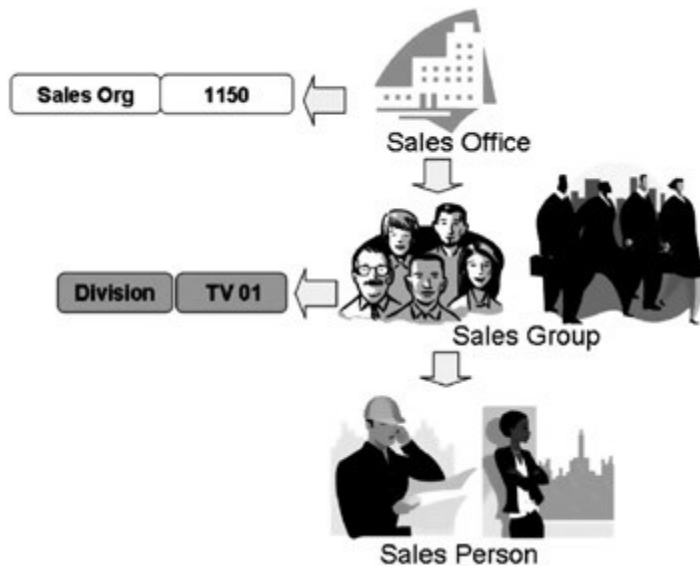


Figure 89: Sales office—Sales group—Sales person structure

### 371. What is a ‘Division’?

A ‘**Division**’ depicts the product or service group for a range of products/services. For each division, you may define and maintain customer-specific parameters such as terms of payment, pricing, etc. The division may come under one or more distribution channels.

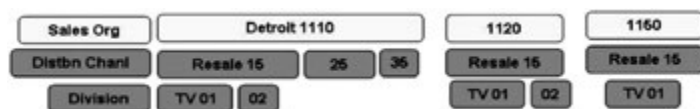


Figure 88: Sales Organization—Distribution Channel—Division Assignment

### 372. Explain the Assignments Among Organizational Units in SD.

1 Company Code	is assigned to	>1 Plant
1 Sales Area		>1 Plant
>1 Sales Area		1 Company Code
1 Distribution Channel		>1 Sales Area

1 Customer		>1 Distribution Channel
>1 Division		>1 Distribution Channel

➡ [Open table as spreadsheet](#)

### 373. What is a ‘Sales Area’?

A ‘**Sales Area**’ is a combination of the **sales organization**, **distribution channel**, and **division**. From [Figure 91](#) you can derive sales area 1110–15–01, which in fact represents that the product ‘TV’ is sold through the ‘resale’ distribution channel from sales organization ‘Detroit.’ Usually, you will use sales areas for reporting purposes.

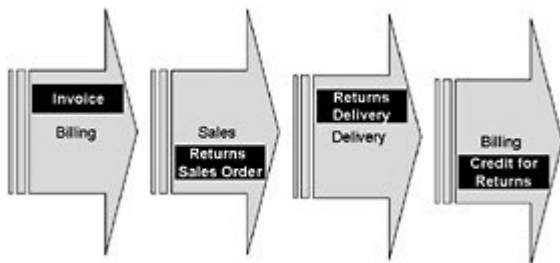


Figure 91: Sales Returns—Process Flow

### 374. Explain How ‘Human Elements’ are Organized in SD.

There are three distinct organizational units in SD from the human angle:

- Sales Office
- Sales Group
- Sales Person

The **Sales Office** represents the geographical dimension in sales and distribution. A sales office is assigned to a **sales area**. The staff of a sales office may be grouped into **Sales Groups**. This corresponds to sales divisions. A **Sales Person** is assigned to a sales group. This assignment is done at the personnel master record level.

### 375. Where and How is a ‘Business Area Assignment’ done?

**Business area** assignment is done at two levels:

- Plant level
- Valuation area level

The ‘business area’ is assigned to the combination of ‘plant’/‘valuation area’ and the ‘division.’

### **376. A ‘Plant’ is Assigned to Which of the Entities in the SD Organization?**

A Plant is assigned to:

- Company Code
- Combination of Sales Organization & Distribution Channel
- Purchasing Organization

### **377. How is the ‘Shipping Point’ Determined by the System?**

The ‘Shipping Point’ is determined by the combination of **shipping condition**, loading group, and plant assigned to a shipping point.

### **378. What are the Important ‘Customer Master Records’?**

Some of the important customer records are:

- Sold-to-Party record
- Ship-to-Party record
- Bill-to-Party record
- Payer record


### **379. What are the Various Sections of the ‘Customer Master Record’?**

The different sections in a master record are:

- **General data**



You will be able to create general data such as addresses, telephones, contact persons, unloading points, etc., either from the accounting side or from the sales side.

	Transaction Code
	<b>VD01</b> <b>XD01</b>

- **Company Code data**

You will be able to create data in account management (credit management, payment details, taxations, insurance, etc.) that pertains to the Company Code in which the customer is created. You do this from the accounting side.

	Transaction Code
	<b>XD01</b>

- **Sales & Distribution data**

The data for pricing, shipping, etc., comes under this category of information. You will create this from the SD area. You can have data for different sales areas for a single customer.

	Transaction Code
	<b>VD01</b>

### **380. What is a ‘Customer-Material Information Record’?**

The information relating to a material that applies only to a specific customer is known as ‘**Customer-Material Information.**’ This is nothing but the description of your ‘material by the customer,’ and you record this customer-specific information in the customer-material information record.



### 381. What is a 'Sales Order'?

A '**Sales Order**' is a contract between your Sales Organization and a Customer for supply of specified goods and/services over a specified timeframe and in an agreed upon quantity or unit. All the relevant information from the customer master record and the material master record, for a specific sales area, are copied to the sales order. The sales order may be created with reference to a 'preceding document' such as a quotation, then all the initial data from the preceding document is copied to the sales order.

The 'sales order' contains:

- **Organizational data** (sales organization, distribution channel, division, sales document type, pricing procedure, etc.).
- **Header data** (sold-to-party, sales office, sales group, pricing date, document date, order reason, document currency, price group, sales district, customer group, shipping condition, incoterms, payment terms, billing schedule, PO number, etc.).
- **Item data** (item category, order quantity, material, batch number, product hierarchy, plant, material group, shipping point, route, delivery priority, customer material, item number, etc.).
- **Schedule line data** (schedule line, schedule line number, delivery date, order quantity, confirmed quantity, material availability date, loading date, proposed goods issue date, transportation date, movement type, shipping point, etc.).

### 382. Explain the Process Flow for a 'Standard Sales Order.'

Starting with the quotation, a 'Standard Sales Order' goes through the following process:

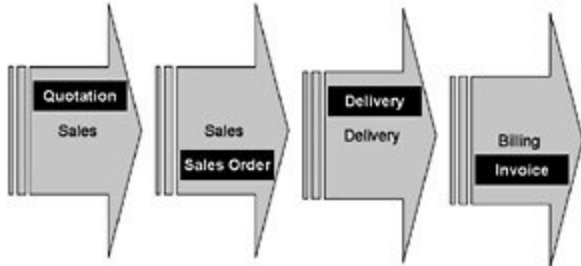


Figure 90: Standard Sales Order—Process Flow

### 383. Outline the Process Flow for 'Sales Returns.'

Starting with the quotation, a 'Sales Return' goes through the following process:

### 384. Describe the Process Flow for a 'Credit Memo.'

The following diagram depicts a typical process flow for a 'Credit Memo':

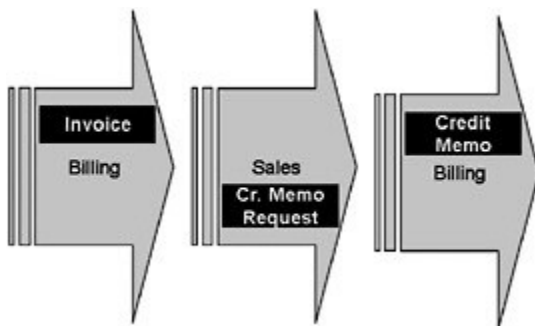


Figure 92: Credit Memo—Process Flow

### 385. What are the 'Special Sales Document Types'?

- **SO** Rush Order
- **G2** Credit
- **RE** Return Order
- **KN** FoC (Free-of-Charge) Subsequent Delivery Order

- **RK** Invoice Correction Request

### **386. What is the ‘Consignment Stock Process’?**

In the ‘**Consignment Stock Process**,’ you allow your stock or material to be at the customer’s site. You may also allow your stock or material to be made available at your site, but reserved for a particular customer. And you will allow the customer to sell or consume as much stock as he wants from this. You will then bill the customer only for the quantities that he has consumed or sold.

You will monitor the consignment stock—also known as **special stock**—in your system customer-wise and material-wise. You will use the standard sales order document type **KB** and standard delivery type **LF** for processing a **consignment sales order**.

### **387. Explain ‘Sales Document Blocking.’**

You may be required to **block** a specific sales document type from further processing, when you want to block undesirable customers. You can achieve this for a specific customer or for a specific document type. You may also block it, in the customer master record, for a single sales area or for all the sales areas attached to the customer.

The blocking is done in customizing by assigning **blocking reasons** to the sales document types. Then in the customer master record do the necessary document block.

### **388. Can You ‘Block’ a Transaction for a Material that is ‘Flagged for Deletion’?**

When you set the ‘**deletion flag**’ for a material at the plant level, you will still be able to enter an order even though the system will ‘warn’ you that the material has been flagged for deletion. If you need to block any transaction for a material, then you

need to use the 'Sales Status' field in the 'Sales Organization View' of the material master.

### **389. Can Items in a 'Sales Order' Belong to Different 'Distribution Channels'?**

No. The various items in a 'Sales Order' should belong to a single distribution channel only. However, the various items in a **delivery** can belong to different distribution channels.

### **390. Can the Items in a 'Billing Document' Belong to Different 'Distribution Channels'?**

No. The various items in a 'Billing Document' should belong to a single distribution channel only.

### **391. Differentiate Between a 'Sales Area' and a 'Sales Line.'**

A 'Sales Area' is comprised of sales organization, distribution channel, and division whereas a **Sales Line** is the combination of the sales organization and the distribution channel.

### **392. Can a 'Sales Area' Belong to Different Company Codes?**

No. A 'Sales Area' can belong to only one Company Code.

### **393. What is the 'Storage Location Rule'?**

The 'Storage Location Rule' assigned in the Delivery Document type determines the Storage Location, even when the storage location is entered during delivery creation. This is based on the following rules:

- **MALA:** Shipping Point/Plant/Storage condition
- **RETA:** Plant/Situation/Storage condition
- **MARE:** MALA then RETA

### **394. How do You Configure the 'Partner Determination Procedure' in SD?**

The 'Partner Determination Procedure' is configured as outlined in the following steps:

- Create an account group
- Create and assign a number range to that account group
- Create and assign the partner functions to the account group
- Create a partner determination procedure
- Assign the partner functions to the partner determination procedure
- Finally, assign the partner determination procedure to the account group

### **395. Where do You Define 'Unloading Points' and 'Goods Receiving Hours'?**

The 'Unloading Points' and 'Goods Receiving Hours' are defined in the Customer Master>General Data>Unloading Points tab.

### **396. Where do You Define the 'Terms of Payment' for a Customer?**

The 'Terms of Payment' for a specific customer is defined in the Customer Master>Company Code Data>Payment Transactions Tab, and also in the Billing Document Tab in the Sales Area Data of the Customer Master.

## **Material Management (MM)**

### **397. What Functions are Supported in the SAP 'Material Management' (MM)?**

The MM module of SAP supports the following functions:

- MRP (Material Requirements Planning)

- Procurement
- Inventory Management
- Inventory Valuation
- Invoice Verification

### **398. What is 'MRP'?**

**'MRP (Material Requirements Planning)'** is nothing but the determination of which materials are required, when and in what quantities, based on current information and forecasts.

### **399. Explain the Basic 'Organizational Structure' in MM.**

The major **Organizational Elements** of MM include:

- Purchasing Organization
- Plant
- Storage Location

The **Purchasing Organization** is typically attached to one Company Code. But a single Company Code can have one or more purchasing organizations. One or more **Plants** are attached to a purchasing organization. One or more **Storage Locations** are attached to a plant. One or more plants are assigned to a Company Code, but one plant is attached to only one Company Code.

Depending on how the purchasing organization has been structured, you may come across three types of structures as detailed below:

- **Cross-plant purchasing organization**

The purchasing organization caters to more than one plant of the same Company Code.

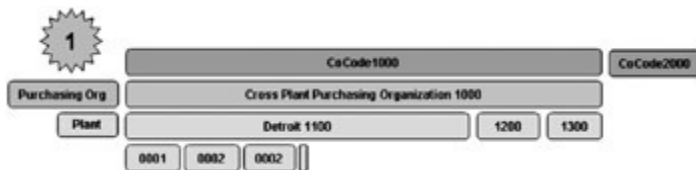


Figure 93: Cross-Plant Purchasing Organization

- **Plant-specific purchasing organization**

Each Plant has it is own purchasing organization.

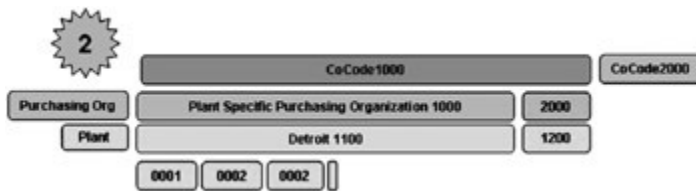


Figure 94: Plant-specific Purchasing Organization

- **Cross-company code purchasing organization**

A single purchasing organization is responsible for the procurement activities of more than one Company Code. The plants attached to this purchasing organization are also cross-Company Code. In this case, the purchasing organization is *not* attached to any of the Company Codes; instead, the various plants are attached to the purchasing organization. This kind of purchasing organization is known as a **central purchasing organization**. This kind of organizational structure is essential in the case of centralized procurement in an enterprise.

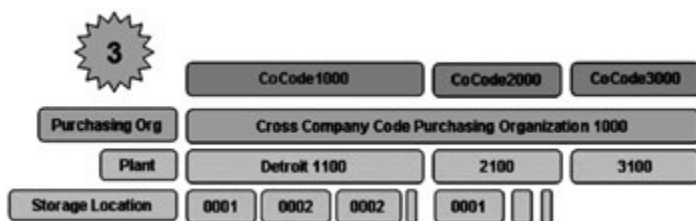


Figure 95: Cross-Company Code Purchasing Organization



#### **400. Define 'Plant' in SAP.**

'Plant' in SAP can denote a manufacturing location, distribution center, or a warehouse. With unique numbers identifying each of the plants, though these are all not all necessarily financial entities, they can still be linked to a **Business Area**. The Plant is the place where you normally value the inventory in SAP. The system, however, checks for the inventory either at the Plant or Plant/Storage Location during an Order entry.

#### **401. Explain the 'Storage Location' in SAP.**

A sub-division of a plant, the '**Storage Location**,' defines a location for materials that can be a warehouse, bin, or a storage area of raw materials/WIP/finished product. You will manage the physical inventory, material movement, picking, cycle counting, etc., at the storage-location level. In **Warehouse Management**, the storage location is further subdivided.

#### **402. Explain the 'Purchasing Organization' in SAP.**

This refers to the organizational structure in SAP that is responsible for procurement of materials. The '**Purchasing Organization**' is the top-most organizational element in MM, and this can take any one of three forms such as (1) **Cross-plant purchasing organizations** (catering to more than one plant but within the same Company Code), (2) **Plant-specific purchasing organizations** (with a 1:1 relationship with the plant), and (3) **Cross-company code purchasing organizations** (catering to more than one Company Code). Entrusted with the activity of negotiating the price, delivery conditions, etc., of materials from vendors, the Purchasing Organization can further be subdivided into **purchasing groups**.

### **403. Explain the ‘Purchasing Group’ Concept in MM.**

The ‘**Purchasing Group**’ carries out the actual activities of purchasing, and is assigned to a material in the material master. The activities of several purchasing organizations can be done by one purchasing group.

### **404. Explain the ‘Valuation Area’ Concept in MM.**

The valuation of a material is done at the ‘**Valuation Area**,’ which can either be at the **Company Code** level or the **Plant** level. The level at which the valuation needs to happen is defined in the customizing. Note that once it is defined, you will not be able to change it later!

When the valuation is at the Company Code level, then the valuation of a material is uniform across the plants attached to that Company Code. On the other hand, if the valuation is at the plant level, then the value of the material is plantspecific and will vary from one plant to another. If you are using **PP (Production Planning)/MRP** in your company, then the valuation has to be at the plant level.

### **405. What is a ‘Factory Calendar’?**

A ‘**Factory Calendar**’ is a calendar that is country-specific with a list of **public holidays** (maintained via the **Holiday Calendar**) and **working days**, which are Client-independent. The factory calendar helps in controlling goods issues/receipts. Each **plant** is assigned a factory calendar, and the calendar must be activated (through ‘CTS functionality’) before using it.

### **406. Explain How SD and MM are Connected in SAP.**

The goods/services from a **plant** can be sold by one or more **sales organizations**. It is also possible that single sales organizations sells goods/services for several plants. When the sales organizations sells for more than one plant belonging to one or more Company Codes, then this is called **inter-company sales**, and will require you to make some special configurations in the system. A sales organization, attached to a

**Company Code**, is further divided into **distribution channels** and **divisions** in SD. A division typically represents a product line, and is assigned to a material in the material master.

#### **407. Outline the Functions Supported by ‘Material Master.’**

The ‘**Material Master**’ is the central master record catering to various business functions in Logistics. The data stored in this master support a variety of business functions and operations such as:

- Production Planning
- MRP
- Procurement
- Invoice Verification
- Inventory Management
- Product Costing
- Sales and Distribution
- Quality Management

The data is stored, within a material master, at different organizational levels. The **general data** is valid for all the Company Codes at the Client level. The purchasing information is valid at the plant level. The **sales information** is valid at the sales organization/distribution channel. Lastly, when **Warehouse Management** is activated, the data is maintained at the warehouse number/storage type level.

#### **408. Explain Why a ‘Material Master’ is Divided into ‘Views.’**

Since the information in a material master needs to be maintained by a number of users across several modules, SAP has structured the master into a number of **Views** for facilitating easier access and updating of data. The views include:

- Basic Data

- Classification
- Sales
- Purchasing
- Purchase Order text
- Accounting
- Foreign Trade
- Work Scheduling
- Forecasting
- Storage
- Costing
- Plant/Storage Location stock
- MRP

#### **409. What Information is Available in the ‘Accounting View’ of a ‘Material Master’?**

The most important information maintained in the ‘**Accounting View**’ of a material master is the **valuation class**, which needs to be assigned to individual materials. The valuation class, in turn, helps in determining the relevant GL accounts for posting valuation-relevant transactions such as GR, GI, etc.

You will maintain the **price control indicator** in the accounting view, which enables determining how the stock of a material is to be valued (at **Standard price (S)** or **Moving average price (V)**).

#### **410. Why do You Need ‘Material Types’ in MM?**

One way to group materials is by ‘**Material Type**’ (the other being by Industry Sector’). This grouping helps determine what information or data is to be made available at the material master level for a particular material.

The material type (for example, FERT, HAWA, HALB, ROH, and so on) is used to control:

- Which Views can be maintained on the master record
- Which Fields are mandatory, optional, or for 'display only' in the material master
- What kind of Procurement is allowed for that material (internal or external or both)
- How to Number (Internal/External) and what Number Range is allowed
- Whether Quantity and/or Value updating should be done in a particular Valuation Area
- Which GL Accounts will be posted to (via the Valuation Class) during goods movement
- The default Item Category Group (S&D)
- The default Price Control Indicator (S or V) and
- Whether the default Price Control Indicator is changeable during material master maintenance

#### **411. Explain the 'Price Control Indicator.'**

The '**Price Control Indicator**' is used by SAP to determine how a material will be valued, by default. The indicator can be set to:

- Standard Price (**S**) or
- Moving Average Price (**V**)

When you set the indicator to '**S**,' the system carries out all the **inventory postings** at the standard price. The **variances** ☐ due to a different price of a material in goods movement or invoice receipts ☐ if any, are all posted to **price difference accounts**.

As a result, the standard price remains the same, unless it is changed intentionally by manual processing. This will be necessary only when the difference between the standard and moving average prices becomes very large. (While updating the price difference accounts, however, the system also updates the moving average price with these variances, so that you get a chance to adjust the standard price should the difference between the standard and moving average prices becomes very substantial.)

Example:

- *1<sup>st</sup> April 2007*
  - Initial Stock : 1000 units
  - (Standard) Price/unit (A) : \$5
  - Initial Stock Value (B) : \$5,000
- *20<sup>th</sup> May 2007*
  - Goods Receipt : 1000 units
  - GR Price/unit (A1) : \$6
  - Stock A/c (Dr.) (C) : \$5,000 (=1000 X \$5)
  - Price Difference A/c (Dr.) : \$1,000 (=1000 X \$1)
  - The amount of \$1,000 posted to the 'price difference' A/c represents the 'variance' reflecting the difference between the new price (A1) and the standard price (A).
  - GR/IR A/c (Cr.) : \$6,000 (=1000 X \$6)
  - Stock Value, now (B1) : \$10,000 (=B+C) (i.e., 2000 units @ \$5)
- *29<sup>th</sup> May 2007*
  - Goods Issue : 100 units

- Price/unit (same as that of A) : \$5

On the other hand, when you set the indicator to ‘V’ then all the goods receipts (GR) will be at the GR value. The system will then adjust the price in the material master by the GR price. However, if there is a difference between the moving average price of the material and the goods movement/invoice receipt, then the price difference is moved to the stock account, and the price of the material in the material master is adjusted accordingly.

Example:

- *1<sup>st</sup> April 2007*
  - Initial Stock : 1000 units
  - (Moving Average) Price/unit (A) : \$5
  - Initial Stock Value (B) : \$5,000
- *20<sup>th</sup> May 2007*
  - Goods Receipt : 1000 units
  - GR Price/unit (A1) : \$6
  - Stock A/c (Dr.) (C) : \$6,000 (=1000 X \$6)
  - GR/IR A/c (Cr.) : \$6,000 (=1000 X \$6)
  - Stock Value, now (B1) : \$11,000 (=B+C) (=2000 units @ \$5.50)

At this point, the price on the material master is adjusted upward from \$5 (A) to \$5.5 (A2) by the system automatically, to reflect the new stock value.

- New Moving Average Price (A2) : \$5.50 (=B1/2000)
- *29<sup>th</sup> May 2007*
  - Goods Issue : 100 units

- Price/unit (A2) : \$5.50

## **412. Explain 'Prices Maintenance' for Materials Transferred from 'Legacy' to SAP.**

Before you transfer the initial inventory from a legacy system to SAP, you need to create the relevant master data for the materials.

If you are planning to maintain a **standard price** for the materials, then you will create the material masters with 'S' as the price control indicator in SAP. With this control, when you enter the material inventory, the system values this stock with the standard price defined. In this case, you enter a new price and the system posts the price difference (between the standard price and the new price you entered) to a price difference account.

Similarly, if you are planning to maintain a **moving average price** for materials, then you will create the material masters with 'V' as the Price Control Indicator in SAP. With this control, when you enter the material inventory, the system values this stock with the moving average price defined. In this case, you enter a new price and the system adjusts the moving average price accordingly. If you enter only the quantity, and not any new price, the system continues to value the stock at the original moving average price, and the price of the material does not change.

## **413. What is the 'Material Status'?**

The **'Material Status'** is a 2-digit code enabling you to control the usability of material for various MM and PP applications. This status key also controls warehouse management, transfers order instructions, quality inspection instructions, decides how the system behaves when a product cost estimate is created, and so on.

The material status can be maintained as (1) Plant-specific material status, (2) Cross-plant material status, and (3) Distribution material status.



#### **414. What is the 'EAN'?**

The '**EAN (International Article Number)**,' equivalent to the **UPC (Universal Product Code)** of the United States, is an international standard number for identifying a material, which SAP allows you to assign (done in the 'Eng./Design or Units of Measure' screen) to the materials. The EAN is normally assigned to the manufacturer of a material. Made up of a prefix (to identify the country or company from where the material originates), article number, and a check digit (ensures correctness of an EAN number so that no incorrect entries are scanned or entered into the system).

#### **415. What are Some of the 'Partner Functions' of a 'Vendor'?**

Through the definition of '**Partner Functions**' in the Vendor Master, SAP helps to designate vendors for different roles. The partner role is designated by a 2-digit code.

- **VN** Vendor
- **PI** Invoice Presented by
- **OA** Ordering Address
- **GS** Goods Supplier
- **AZ** Payment Recipient

A **partner schema** (also known as a **partner procedure**) is assigned to a **vendor account group**. The procedure specifies which partner roles are 'allowed'/'mandatory'/'can be changed' for a vendor master with that account group. You may assign three different partner schemas to an account group, one for each level of purchasing data, i.e., one at the purchase organization level, one at the VSR level, and one at the plant level. This enables maintaining different partners at different organizational levels.

#### **416. What is a 'Batch' in the Context of 'Batch Management'?**

Representing a quantity of material with a homogenous set of properties/characteristics produced during a particular cycle of manufacturing, a **'Batch'** is a subset of inventory quantity, which cannot be reproduced again with the same properties. A batch is linked to the **classification system**, and you can use it only when the classification system has been set up properly for **batch management**.

A batch is unique for a single material, and is unique at the Client level as well. That is, you will be able to use a batch number only once in the Client regardless of the plant and material. The batch will be known only in the plant where it was created. The batch numbers can either be manually assigned or system generated.

#### **417. What are the Possible Values for 'Procurement Types'?**

The possible values for **'Procurement Types'** are:

- No procurement
- External procurement
- In-house production
- Both procurement types

#### **418. What are the 'prerequisites' for an 'MRP Run'?**

The following are the **'prerequisites'** for an **MRP Run**:

- MRP activated
- Valid MRP data for the material
- Valid MRP type
- Valid material status

## 419. What is an 'MRP Area'?

An '**MRP Area**' is not an organizational structure, but a unit for which you can carry out **Consumption-based MRP**. The MRP area is used to carry out MRP for the components provided to a sub-contractor. There are three types of MRP areas that you will come across:

- MRP Area for Storage Locations
- MRP Area for Subcontracting Vendor Stock
- MRP Area for the Plant

## 420. What is an 'MRP List'?

An '**MRP List**' displays the results of the last 'planning run.' Using a 'collective display' format, you will be able to display planning details for a number of materials for a given set of 'selection parameters.'

## 421. Explain the 'Re-Order Point' Procedure.

The '**Re-Order Point**' is the level of inventory that triggers material procurement. Once the inventory falls below this level, you need to create the **order proposal** either manually or automatically by the system.

In the case of the **manual re-order point** procedure, you will define the reorder point and the **safety stock** in the material master. On the other hand, in the **automatic re-order point** procedure, the system will calculate the re-order point and the safety stock based on the next period's consumption pattern.

## 422. Explain the 'Inventory Management' Submodule.

The '**Inventory Management**' submodule deals with the GR/GI of materials from/into the inventory. It also manages the transfer of materials from one storage location to another. As an important element of MM, this module is integrated with SD, PP, QM, and PM modules.

## 423. What is 'Goods Movement'?

**'Goods Movement'** represents an event causing a change in the stock, with the change being value or status, stock type, or quantity. It also represents the physical movement of stock from one location to another. Goods movement is classified into:

- Receipt of goods/services
- Issue of materials
- Stock transfers

## 424. What is a 'Goods Receipt'?

A **'Goods Receipt (GR)'** results in an increase in the quantity/value of the stock in a plant/warehouse. A GR may be **'with/without reference to a Purchase Order.'** A GR leads to:

- A Material document
- An Accounting document (not always)
- GR Slip printing
- GL Account update
  - Consumption Account
  - Stock Account
- Quantity updating
  - Stock quantity
  - Consumption statistics
  - Vendor Evaluation
- Other updates (if applicable)
  - Cost Center
  - Project

- A Stock Transfer Order
- Purchase Order History updates

## **425. Explain the 'Accounting' Side of GR.**

When you post a GR with reference to a purchase order:

- **GR before Invoice Receipt:**
  - A posting will be made to the stock account (stock value increases)
  - An offsetting entry is made to the GR/IR clearing account
    - Once the invoice is received, the GR/IR clearing account is cleared
    - A posting is made to the A/P account for the vendor (payables increase)
- **Invoice Receipt (IR) before the GR**
  - A posting is made to the A/P account for the vendor (payables increase)
  - A posting is made to the GR/IR clearing account
    - Once the goods are received, the GR/IR clearing account is cleared
    - A posting will be made to the stock account (stock value increases)

When the GR is for a consumable material, the initial posting will go to the 'consumption account' (expense account) instead of a 'stock account.' However, the offsetting entry will still go to the GR/IR 'clearing account.' The value of the posting to the stock account will depend on which type of 'price control' is being used.

## 426. What Happens During a ‘Goods Issue’?

The ‘**Goods Issue (GI)**’ results in a reduction in the stock quantity/value. The GI can be **Planned** (via sales order, production order, return delivery, delivery for internal, use etc.) or **Unplanned** (drawing a stock for a sample, scrapping, etc.).

The GI results in:

- Creation of a Material/Accounting document
- Update of Reservation for the issue (if any)
- Update of GL accounts
- Update of ‘points of consumption’ if applicable (cost center, project, etc.)
- Update of Stock quantity

## 427. Explain ‘Stock Transfers.’

The physical movement of stock between locations is called a ‘**Stock Transfer,**’ which can be within a plant or between plants. Stock transfers can be carried out either in a single step or in two steps. The stock transfer may be from:

- Company to Company
- Plant to Plant
- Storage Location to Storage Location

If there is a logical change in the stock type/status, then this kind of ‘transfer’ is called a ‘**transfer posting.**’ The transfer posting may be from:

- Product to Product
- Quality Inspection to Unrestricted Use
- Consignment Store to Storage Location

## 428. What is a 'Stock Type'?

Used in the determination of available stock of a material, the '**Stock Type**' is the sub-division of inventory at a storage location based on the use of that inventory. In SAP, there are many kinds of stock types:

- **Unrestricted (use) stock** (the physical stock that is always available at a plant/storage location)
- **Restricted (use) stock**
- **Quality inspection stock** (not counted for unrestricted use and may be made available for MRP)
- **Stock-in transfer**
- **Blocked stock** (not to be counted as unrestricted stock and is not available for MRP)

Besides all of the above, which are all known as **valuated stocks**, you will also come across one more type called '**GR blocked stock**,' which is a **non-valuated stock**.

The **GR-blocked stock** denotes all the stock accepted 'conditionally' from the vendors. This stock is not considered available for 'unrestricted use.' You will use the **Movement Type 103** for the GR-blocked stock and **Movement Type 101** is used for a normal GR.

## 429. Explain 'Return Delivery.'

You will use '**Return Delivery**' when you return goods to the supplier (vendor) for reasons such as damaged packaging, etc. Note that the '**reason for return**' is mandatory as this will help you, later on, to analyze problems with a vendor. The system uses the **Movement Type 122**, and will create a **return delivery slip**, which will accompany the goods being returned.

If the 'return' is from a 'GR-blocked stock,' you need to use a different **Movement Type: 104**.

## 430. What are All the Various Types of 'Physical Inventory'?

The following are the different types of 'Physical Inventory' in SAP MM:

- **Periodic inventory** (All the stocks are physically counted on a 'key date' (balance sheet date), and all the stock movements are blocked during physical counting)
- **Cycle counting** (Physical counting is done at periodical intervals)
- **Sampling** (Randomly selected stocks are counted physically, and the system uses this information to 'estimate' stock value on a given date)
- **Continuous** (Stocks are tracked continuously throughout the fiscal year, with physical stock taking once a year, at least!)

## 431. What is a 'Material Ledger'?

A 'Material Ledger' is nothing but a tool for inventory accounting that provides new methods for 'price control' for 'material valuation' (you can store the material inventory values in more than one currency). It makes it possible to keep the 'material price' constant over a period of time (say, over the life of a production order). The **moving average price** field is used to store a 'periodic price.' This periodic price stays constant and is the price used for valuation until you close the material ledger. At closing, the periodic price is updated based on the actual value of invoice receipts received for that material during the period.

## 432. Explain 'Split Valuation.' Why is it Necessary?

'Split Valuation' allows substocks of the same material to be managed in different stock accounts. This allows substocks to be valued separately, and every transaction is carried out at the substock level. So, when processing a transaction, it is necessary to mention the substock.

The 'split valuation' is necessary if the material has:

- Different Origins



- Various Levels of Quality
- Various Statuses

It is also required in situations where you need to make a distinction between ‘in-house produced materials’ and ‘materials procured externally,’ or if there is a distinction between ‘different deliveries.’

### **433. Explain the Basic Steps in ‘Configuring Split Valuation.’**

The five basic steps for ‘Configuring Split Valuation’ are:

1. Activate ‘Split Valuation’
2. Define ‘Global Valuation Types’

For each Valuation type’ you need to specify: *(a)* whether ‘external’ purchase orders are allowed, *(b)* whether production orders are allowed, and *(c)* the account category reference.

3. Define ‘Global Valuation Categories’

For each valuation category specify: *(a)* default ‘valuation type’ to be used when purchase orders are created and whether this default can be changed, *(b)* default valuation type to be used when production orders are created and whether this default can be changed, and *(c)* whether a ‘valuation record’ should be created automatically when a GR is posted for a valuation type for which no record yet exists.

4. Allocate ‘Valuation Types’ to the ‘Valuation Categories’
5. Define which of the ‘Global Categories/Types’ apply to which ‘Valuation Areas’

## **434. Outline 'Stock Valuation Methods' for Material Revaluation.**

There are three methods with which you can revalue your stock for Balance Sheet purposes. Irrespective of the method you select, you will be able to value your stock either at the Company Code level or at the Valuation Area level:

1. **LIFO (Last-In-First-Out):** This method is based on the assumption that the materials received last were the ones issued/consumed first. The valuation is based on the initial receipt.
2. **FIFO (First-In-First-Out):** Here the assumption is that the materials received first are the ones consumed/issued first. So, the valuation is based on the most recent receipt. The FIFO method can also be used in conjunction with the **lowest value method**. By this you can determine whether the system should make a comparison between the FIFO determined price and the **lowest value price**. You can also determine whether the FIFO price should be updated in the material master record.
3. **Lowest Value Method:** Here, the stocks are valued at their original price or the current market price whichever is lower. This method is suitable when the inventory needs to be valued to take into account material obsolescence, physical deterioration, or changes in price levels.

## **435. How Does 'Automatic Account Assignment' Work in MM?**

1. 'GL accounts' are assigned to 'Transaction Keys' (BSX, WRX, PRD, UMG, GBB, etc.).
2. Transaction Keys identify which GL Accounts are to be debited or credited.
3. Transaction Keys are assigned to 'Value Strings' (for example, WA01).
4. 'Movement Types' (for example, 901) are associated with a 'Value String.'

## 436. Explain 'Automatic Account Assignment' Configuration in MM.

There are four steps required to complete the 'Automatic Account Assignment' configuration settings for MM:

1. Finalize the '**valuation level.**'
2. Activate the '**valuation grouping code**' option. (For this you need to group **valuation areas** using valuation grouping codes.)
3. Maintain '**valuation classes**' and '**account category references**' and their linkage to '**material types.**'
4. Maintain the '**GL accounts**' for each combination of **Chart of accounts,** **valuation grouping code, valuation class, and transaction key.**

You may use the '**automatic account determination wizard**' to complete the configuration settings, as the wizard guides you step-by-step.

## 437. Explain the 'Transaction Keys' in MM.

Also known as '**process keys,**' the '**Transaction Keys**' are pre-defined in the system to enable transaction postings in Inventory Management and Accounting (Invoice Verification). For each of the **movement types** in MM, there is a **value string** that stores these possible transactions.

The pre-defined **transaction keys** are:

- **BSX** (used in Inventory Postings)
- **WRX** (used in GR/IR Clearing Postings)
- **PRD** (used to post Cost/Price differences)
- **UMB** (used to post Revenue/Expenses from revaluation)
- **GBB** (used in offsetting entries in Stock postings)

**BSX**, **WRX**, and **PRD** are examples of transaction keys that are relevant for a GR with reference to a purchase order for a material with standard price control. The transaction key **UMB** is used when the standard price has changed and the movement is posted to a previous period. Likewise, **GBB** is used to identify the GL account to post to as the offsetting entry to the stock account (when not referencing a purchase order) such as miscellaneous goods receipts, goods issues for sales orders with no account assignment, and scrapping.

### **438. How Does the System Determine the Correct ‘GL a/c’ for a Posting?**

Imagine that you are posting a goods movement.

- Since the goods movement is from a **plant**, and the plant is assigned to a Company Code, the goods movement identifies the relevant Company Code.
- As the **Company Code** has already been assigned to the **Chart of Accounts**, the system is able to identify the **GL accounts**.
- The plant also determines the **valuation area** (and the optional ‘**valuation grouping code**’).
- Since each **movement type** is assigned to a ‘**value string**’ which in turn is identified with a **transaction key**, the goods movement determines the correct transaction key.

## **Production Planning (PP)**

### **439. Explain How the PP Module is Organized in SAP.**

The **PP** module is made up of the following **components**:

- **PP-BD** Basic Data
- **PP-SOP** Sales and Operations Planning
- **PP-MP** Master Planning

- **PP-CRP** Capacity (Requirements) Planning
- **PP-MRP** Material Requirements Planning
- **PP-SFC** Production Orders
- **PP-KAN** Kanban
- **PP-REM** Repetitive Manufacturing
- **PP-PI** Production Planning for Process Industries
- **PP-PDS** Plant Data Collection
- **PP-IS** Information Systems

#### **440. Explain How 'PP' is 'Integrated' with Other Modules.**

'PP' is one of the modules in SAP R/3 that is complex as the functions cut across many modules. The following modules are tightly **integrated** with PP:

- **CO** Controlling
- **FI** Financial Accounting
- **MM** Materials Management
- **SD** Sales & Distribution
- **PS** Project Systems
- **PD** Personnel Planning and Development

#### **441. What is a 'BOM'?**

A '**BOM (Bill of Material)**' is nothing but a structured list of components (with the object number, quantity, and unit of measure) that go into the making of a product or an assembly. Depending on the industry sector, they may also be called **recipes** or lists of ingredients. The structure of the product determines whether the bill of material is **simple** or very **complex**.

## 442. What are the 'BOM Categories' Supported by SAP?

The following are the various **Categories of BOM**:

- Equipment BOM
- Material BOM
- Sales Order BOM
- Document Structure
- Functional Location BOM
- WBS BOM

## 443. What are All the 'Technical Types of BOM'?

There are two '**Technical Types of BOM**' supported in SAP:

- Variant BOM
- Material BOM

## 444. Differentiate 'Variant BOM' from 'Multiple BOM.'

While a '**Variant BOM**' groups together several BOMs that describe *different* objects (for example, different models of a car) with a high proportion of identical parts, a **Multiple BOM** groups together several BOMs that describe *one* object (for example, a product) with different combinations of materials for different processing methods.

The Variant BOMs are supported for the following BOM categories:

- Material BOMs
- Document structures
- Equipment BOMs
- Functional location BOMs

Multiple BOMs are only supported for Material BOMs.

#### **445. Is it Possible to Convert a 'Multiple BOM' into a 'Variant BOM'?**

No. You can only create a '**Variant BOM**' from a simple Material BOM. No multiple BOMs can exist for a material.

#### **446. What is a 'Work Center' in PP?**

A '**Work Center**' in PP (PP-BD-BOM) is an organizational unit that can be a combination of machines or groups of craftsmen, people, and production lines, wherein certain operations are carried out to produce some output. Each of the work centers is assigned to a cost center. A work center can be assigned to a work center in SAP-HR, which will enable assignment of employees, qualifications, etc.

#### **447. What is a 'Routing' in PP?**

A '**Routing**' in PP (PP-BD-RTG) is used to define the sequence of operations (work steps) and resources required to perform certain operations in order to produce a material with or without reference to an order. The standard values of planned time for the various operations need to be entered into the routing.

There are two different types of routing:

- Routing
- Rate routing

(A similar concept exists in PS where you define a '**task list**,' which is similar to 'routing' in PP.)

#### **448. What are All the 'Sub-components' of Production Orders?**

The following are the '**Sub-components of Production Orders**' (PP-SFC):

- Order Planning
- Order Execution

- Order Close

#### **449. What is a 'Product Hierarchy'?**

Used in pricing, a **'Product Hierarchy'** is an alphanumeric character string consisting of a maximum of 18 characters. It thus defines the product and its composition.

Example:

A product hierarchy represented by '00050002000300040005.' The first four characters '0005' could indicate that the product is a car. The next four characters '0002' could indicate the plant in which the car is manufactured. The third set of characters could indicate the color of the car. The next set may determine its engine capacity and so on. Thus, the product hierarchy helps in defining the product composition.

#### **450. Define 'BOM Group.'**

A **'BOM Group'** is a collection of BOMs that lets you describe a product or a number of similar products. The value in the BOM group field uniquely identifies the BOM group. You can use the BOM group as an alternative way of accessing the BOM. A BOM group comprises either all the alternatives of a multiple BOM or all the variants of a variant BOM.

When you create a BOM group, the system checks the special characters you use. Apart from the usual alphanumeric characters, you can use the following special characters: '-', '/', '\_', '. ' You cannot use blanks.

#### **451. Define 'SOP' (Sales & Operations Planning).**

Suitable for long/medium-term planning, with an aim to streamline a company's **'Sales and Operational Planning, SOP'** is a forecasting tool enabling you to set up sales, production, and other supply chain targets based on existing, future, or



historical data. SOP is most suitable for planning finished goods, and not for material component planning.

SOP plans are passed on to **Demand Management (DEM)** in the form of independent requirements, which in turn is fed into **MPS (Master Production Scheduling)** and **MRP (Material Requirements Planning)**. The results of SOP can be passed on to profitability analysis, cost center accounting, and activity-based costing.

SOP contains two application components; namely, **Standard SOP (PP-SOP)** and **Flexible Planning (LO-LIS-PLN)**. The Standard SOP comes pre-configured with the system. Flexible planning can be configured in a variety of ways.

#### **452. What is known as ‘Demand Management’?**

‘**Demand Management**’ (PP-MP-DEM) helps in determining the requirement quantities and delivery dates for finished goods assemblies. It uses the **planned independent requirements** and customer requirements (customer requirements come from sales orders). **Planning strategies** help in deciding the kind of demand program. If production is triggered by sales orders, then it is known as ‘**Make-toOrder**’ production; if is not then it is known as ‘**Make-to-Stock**’ production.

#### **453. What is ‘Capacity Planning’?**

‘**Capacity Planning**’ aims at economic use of resources. It is integrated with SD, PM, PS, and CS. There are two components within capacity planning: **Capacity evaluation** and **Capacity levelling**. Capacity planning supports short-term detailed planning, medium-term planning, and long-term rough-cut planning.

#### **454. Explain ‘MRP’ (Material Requirements Planning).**

‘**MRP**’ aims to guarantee **material availability**; it is used to procure/produce the required quantities on time (both for internal purposes and for sales and distribution). This involves monitoring of stocks and, in particular, the automatic creation of

‘procurement proposals’ for purchasing and production. PP-MRP assists and relieves MRP Controllers (who are responsible for all the activities from specifying when, what, type, etc., of material requirements) in their area of responsibility. With the automatic planning run in MRP, it is possible to determine any shortages so as to create procurement elements. With the system generating messages for critical parts and unusual situations, you can rework the planning results in the specific area with problems.

The material requirements can be planned at **plant level** or for different MRP areas. With MRP at the plant level, the system adds together stocks from all of the individual storage locations, with the exception of individual customer stocks, to determine total plant stock. In the case of material requirements planning on an **MRP area level**, only the stocks from the storage locations or subcontractor assigned to the respective MRP areas are taken into account.

#### **455. What are the Three ‘MRP Procedures’?**

- Materials Requirements Planning (MRP)
- Master Production Scheduling (MPS)
- Consumption-based Planning

#### **456. What is ‘MPS’ (Master Production Scheduling)?**

Executed as that of an MRP, ‘MPS’ is nothing but a special form of MRP, which aims to **reduce storage costs** and to **increase planning stability**. With MPS you can flag materials that greatly influence company profits or take up critical resources as **master schedule items** and check and plan them separately with a series of special tools.

#### **457. What is ‘Consumption-based Planning’?**

Using past consumption data, ‘Consumption-based Planning’ aims at determining future requirements. In the process, it makes use of **material forecasts** or any other

‘static’ planning procedures. The ‘net requirements’ calculation is triggered when the stock level falls below a **reorder point**. The net requirements can also be calculated by **forecast requirements** from a historical consumption pattern.

## **Miscellaneous**

### **458. Explain ‘Cash Management’ in SAP.**

The ‘**Cash Management**’ submodule takes care of the following by integrating bank-related accounting with the respective subledger accounting:

- Check Deposit
- Cash Position
- Cash Concentration
- Bank Statement
- Liquidity Forecast
- Cash Concentration
- Money Market

### **459. What is the ‘Cash (Management) Position’?**

The ‘**Cash Management Position**’ helps to reproduce the activities of bank accounts. With input controls for preventing data duplication, parallel management of foreign currencies, and with the required documentation for revision of all planning activities, you will be able to view up-to-date activities in bank accounts and forecast cash position or daily liquidity. The cash management position is set up using **groupings**, which determine the levels and accounts to be displayed.

The data required for this activity is supplied from (a) FI postings in cash management relevant GL accounts, (b) payment advices entered manually, and (c) cash-flow transactions transferred from the Treasury Management module.

The data can be displayed using any of the following formats:

- Aggregated, either as account balance (K) or as individual values of inflow/outflow (D)
- For any data in the past, present, or future
- In increments (days, weeks, etc.)

#### 460. Explain 'Groupings' and 'Levels.'

'Groupings' determine how to summarize the data, with various 'groups' and 'levels' defined. A **Group** adds up various bank accounts and contains a number of 'levels.'

A **Level**, thus, denotes the sources of data or account transactions. Below the levels are the **line items**, which are displayed using a 'list display.'

Cash Management: Grouping Structure								
Grouping	Ty	Selection	CoCd	ChAc	Exclude	Sum. term	Summ. acct	SCOD
BANK-IST	G	++			<input type="checkbox"/>	**		
BANK-IST	G	0000113100			<input type="checkbox"/>	DEUTSCHE		
BANK-IST	G	0000113150			<input type="checkbox"/>	DEUTSCHE		
BANK-IST	G	0000113160			<input type="checkbox"/>	DEUTSCHE		
BANK-IST	G	0000113200			<input type="checkbox"/>	DRESDNER		
BANK-IST	G	0000113250			<input type="checkbox"/>	DRESDNER		
BANK-IST	G	0000113260			<input type="checkbox"/>	DRESDNER		
BANKEN	E	++			<input type="checkbox"/>	**		
BANKEN	G	0000113100			<input type="checkbox"/>	DEUTSCHE		
BANKEN	G	0000113101			<input type="checkbox"/>	DEUTSCHE		
BANKEN	G	0000113102			<input type="checkbox"/>	DEUTSCHE		
BANKEN	G	0000113103			<input type="checkbox"/>	DEUTSCHE		
BANKEN	G	0000113104			<input type="checkbox"/>	DEUTSCHE		
BANKEN	G	0000113105			<input type="checkbox"/>	DEUTSCHE		
BANKEN	G	0000113106			<input type="checkbox"/>	DEUTSCHE		
BANKEN	G	0000113108			<input type="checkbox"/>	DEUTSCHE		
BANKEN	G	0000113150			<input type="checkbox"/>	DEUTSCHE		
BANKEN	G	0000113160			<input type="checkbox"/>	DEUTSCHE		
BANKEN	G	0000113200			<input type="checkbox"/>	DRESDNER		

Figure 96: Grouping Structure in Cash Management

#### 461. Explain 'Liquidity Forecast.'

The '**Liquidity Forecast**' helps to reproduce the activities in subledger accounts by (a) linking to all the 'system resident' data such as customer open items in a customer account, (b) receipts and disbursements from FI/SD/MM, and (c) maintaining items such as reversal, document change, open item clearing, etc., automatically.

The liquidity forecast helps to identify the liquidity trends in the subledger accounts based on the information on expected payment flows. The incoming and outgoing payments per open item, from FI-AR and FI-AP, form the basis of the liquidity forecast. You will be able to branch to FI-AR or AP information systems from the liquidity forecast.

#### **462. How do You Set Up ‘Cash Management’ in SAP?**

Under customizing, you need to define the ‘**Cash Management Groups**’ and assign these groups to **planning levels**. In customer/vendor master records, you need to enter the cash management groups to enable the system to transfer data between customer/vendor accounts and the liquidity forecast. The cash management groups help to differentiate customers/vendors based on certain characteristics such as behavior (whether the customer takes a cash discount), risk (credit rating), etc.

#### **463. Explain ‘Bank Statement’ in Cash Management.**

‘**Bank Statement**’ (manual or electronic) functionality runs on the same principle as **Check Deposit Processing**. Note that it is not necessary for Cash Management to be active for bank statement processing.

During processing, customer payments (except checks) are first posted to the bank clearing account; then customer open items are cleared when balancing the bank clearing account. Similarly, vendor payments are posted to a bank clearing account for outgoing payments where the balancing is done from the entries made from the payment program. Other payments such as bank charges, bank interest, etc., are posted to the respective GL accounts, and they will not go through the bank clearing accounts. In the case of unidentified payment transactions, you will post them first to the bank clearing accounts and then ‘clear’ them when you have the appropriate information.

#### 464. What are the Configurations for 'Bank Statement Processing'?

Before you make use of the **‘Bank Statement Processing’** functionality in SAP, you need to have the following defined or configured in your system:

- Start Variant
- Search ID
- Processing Type
- Internal Bank Determination

Posting Structure				Define Posting Rules											
<input type="checkbox"/> Create Account Sy	<input type="checkbox"/> Assign Accounts to	<input type="checkbox"/> Create keys for Pos	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Define Posting Rule	Pos	Pos	S	Acct (Debit)	Compre	Pos	S	Acct (Cre)	Compre	Doc	Pos	On
				0001	1	40	BANK	<input type="checkbox"/>	50		GELDEINGA	<input type="checkbox"/>	SA	1	
				0001	2	40	GELDEINGANG	<input type="checkbox"/>				<input type="checkbox"/>	DZ	8	
				0002	1	40	BANK	<input type="checkbox"/>	50		SHECKEING	<input type="checkbox"/>	SA	1	
				0003	1	40	SHECKEINGANG	<input type="checkbox"/>	50		SHECKOVER	<input type="checkbox"/>	SA	1	
				0003	2	40	SHECKOVERRECHN	<input type="checkbox"/>				<input type="checkbox"/>	DZ	8	
				0004	2	40	SHECKEINGANG	<input type="checkbox"/>				<input type="checkbox"/>	DZ	8	
				0005	1		SHECKAUSGANG	<input type="checkbox"/>	50		BANK	<input type="checkbox"/>	SA	4	
				0006	1		GELDAUSGANG	<input type="checkbox"/>	50		BANK	<input type="checkbox"/>	SA	4	
				0007	1	40	GELDAUSGANG	<input type="checkbox"/>	50		BANK	<input type="checkbox"/>	KZ	1	
				0007	2			<input type="checkbox"/>	50		GELDAUSGA	<input type="checkbox"/>	KZ	7	
				0008	1		SONSTIGE	<input type="checkbox"/>	50		BANK	<input type="checkbox"/>	SA	4	
				0009	1	40	BANK	<input type="checkbox"/>			SONSTIGE	<input type="checkbox"/>	SA	5	
				0010	1	40	GEBÜHREN	<input type="checkbox"/>	50		BANK	<input type="checkbox"/>	SA	1	
				0011	1	40	SONSTIGE	<input type="checkbox"/>	50		BANK	<input type="checkbox"/>	SA	1	
				0012	1	40	BANK	<input type="checkbox"/>	50		SONSTIGE	<input type="checkbox"/>	SA	1	
				0013	1	40	GELDAUSGANG	<input type="checkbox"/>	50		BANK	<input type="checkbox"/>	SA	1	

### Figure 97: Bank Statement Configuration

**465. Differentiate 'Manual Check Deposit' from 'Electronic Check Deposit.'**

The **‘Manual Check Deposit’** function enables you to enter all ‘checks’ received by posting the entries in two steps: in GL and in subledger accounts. It also helps to ‘clear’ customer invoices. You may also make use of additional functions for additional processing of checks thus entered.

The **‘Electronic Check Deposit,’** in contrast to the ‘manual check deposit’ function, enables you to process data even from an external data entry system provided the data is delivered in the SAP defined format. You will be able to enter check deposit details electronically so that you may complete and post individual data later with manual check deposit processing.

## 466. Explain 'Travel Management' in SAP.

The '**Travel Management**' submodule of FI, FI-TR, helps you to plan travel and travel-related activities (such as calculating trip costs, trip reimbursements, etc.) for the enterprise's human resources.

FI-TR transfers the travel expenses to the FI, which in turn makes use of FI-AP to reimburse employees. Employees are reimbursed for travel expenses using the 'payment program' (automatic/manual) in Financial Accounting. In order for the reimbursement process to work, a vendor master record has to be created for every employee who travels. Use **Transaction PRAA** to automatically create (through Batch Data input) vendor records for the employees.

If you are using SAP-HR, then you will use **HR master data** to store an employee's information; otherwise, you will create a **mini-master** record (a scaled down version of HR master) where you will save such as personal information, address, bank details, etc. You will also define personal action, travel privileges, and travel preferences.

## 467. What is a 'Personal Action'?

A '**Personnel Action**' includes all **infotypes** that are processed as part of a personal procedure, such as hiring, organizational change, promotion, and so on. To ensure that no important information is forgotten, the relevant infotypes are made available for processing one after another. Each completed action is entered in the 'action' infotype so that the 'actions' infotype has a log of all procedures completed for this person.

Personnel actions are normally completed in SAP-HR. If SAP-HR is not implemented, FI-TV offers two 'actions' for maintaining FI-TV mini-master records:

- **Create TV mini-master records.** (When completing the 'Create TV mini-master record' action, the infotype's 'measures,' 'organizational assignment,' 'personal information,' and 'travel privileges' are made available.)

- **Organizational change.** (When using the ‘organizational change’ action, only the infotype’s ‘actions’ and ‘organizational assignment’ are made available.)

## 468. What is an ‘Infotype’?

HR master data normally contain large volumes of information (personal as well as employment related) per employee in the organization. Since the data volume is so large, this information is stored in data groups, in SAP. An **‘Infotype’** is one such data group. (For example, since city, street, and street number are part of the address of an employee’s bank, they are saved (along with other data) in the Infotype Bank.)

IType	Infotype text
0000	Actions
0001	Organizational Assignment
0002	Personal Data
0003	Payroll Status
0004	Challenge
0005	Leave Entitlement
0006	Addresses
0007	Planned Working Time
0008	Basic Pay
0009	Bank Details
0010	Capital Formation
0011	External Transfers
0012	Fiscal Data D
0013	Social Insurance D
0014	Recurring Payments/Deductions
0015	Additional Payments
0016	Contract Elements
0017	Travel Privileges
0019	Monitoring of Tasks
0020	RELIEF

Figure 98: Infotypes in SAP

## 469. Explain ‘Travel Manager’ in SAP.

**‘Travel Manager,’** in SAP, helps employees have an overview of travel and travel-related items/objects (such as travel requests, travel plans, and travel reimbursements). He or she will be able to create:

A **‘travel request’** notifying the company about his/her forthcoming business trip, based on the workflow configuration, which then moves to the internal travel office for further approval and processing.



The employee (or the designated travel agent of the company) makes use of the object **travel plan** to plan the details of the **trip**. The system retrieves the **travel preferences** from the 'infotype' and helps book the means of travel.

The permitted **travel expenses** are configured in the system and are country specific. This configuration helps in **reimbursement processing** when the employee puts through the travel reimbursement claim to the internal travel office. After a trip is completed, the employee enters the travel expenses manually in the system or they can be obtained from the travel plans and corrected later. Again, SAP provides the flexibility so that travel expenses can either be entered by employees or by the travel office's representative.

For reimbursement settlement of the expenses, the system determines the total amount to be paid based on the travel plan, travel information, settlement rules, and reimbursement records (for previous payments). The **settlement information** is sent to FI, where the payment is made through FI-AP's payment program.



#### **470. What is a 'Value Priced'?**

The '**Value Pricer**' tool, in SAP-HR, helps to compare the selected bookings (of a flight) and compares the price of it with that of other carriers, for the same route(s), and recommends the lowest cost fares for the travel plan.

#### **471. What is a 'Schedule Manager'?**

The SAP '**Schedule Manager**' helps you to organize, execute, and monitor complex and repetitive business transactions (such as month-end processing) from an easy-to-use workspace, which resembles an all-in-one 'organizer' type of utility containing:

- User notes window

- Task overview window
- Calendar window
- Daily overview window

The **information window** provides the details of what and how you can achieve the tasks by providing useful information with hyperlinks to processes and steps within a process. This appears to the left of all other windows. Depending on the requirement, this can be ‘switched-on’ or ‘switched-off.’

The **task overview window** provides a complete ‘drill-down’ facility in a treestructure of all tasks entered and monitored by you. The tasks are grouped into an upper level task list, which can be scheduled, released, and monitored using the ‘daily overview’ window. Remember that the tasks maintained in the task overview window need to be properly scheduled/released for execution; the mere listing of tasks here will not start a transaction or a program or a report.

The **daily overview window** is similar to an appointment column of any organizer, with fully customizable time intervals (in increments of 30 minutes, 45 minutes, etc.). Ideally, the tasks appearing in the task list in the ‘task overview’ window, when scheduled/released, will appear here against the appropriate time slot. By selecting a task here you can monitor it using the ‘monitor’ icon or from the menu. A look at this daily overview window, at the beginning of a day, will remind you of the tasks scheduled for that day.



Figure 99: Schedule Manager

The **calendar window** is a calendar utility to help you organize. However, this goes beyond the regular calendar by displaying, in different colors such as yellow and green, a particular date indicating the status of tasks scheduled for that day. A ‘green’ background indicates that everything is OK, but a ‘yellow’ background indicates that there are some warnings.



## 472. How do You Use the ‘Schedule Manager’ in SAP?

The Schedule Manager has **three distinct functionalities** built in:

### 1. Processes

This functionality helps you to define the **task list** (also called a **task group**) and the individual **tasks** (a task is essentially a transaction or a program/report), which are later on ‘scheduled’/‘released’ and ‘monitored’ using the special ‘**monitoring**’ function. Any number of task lists can be created and these lists are shown in a tree format for easy navigation. A task list may contain another task list or a **chain of tasks** within and tasks are grouped into a task list.

While defining the task itself, you can maintain the owner of the task, when it needs to be executed, etc. The scheduling of tasks is also possible by simply dragging them into the appropriate time slots in the ‘daily overview’ window. You may also use the ‘**job wizard**’ while scheduling. A task, by mere scheduling, is not started automatically unless it is properly ‘**released.**’ The tasks/task lists defined can be moved in the hierarchy up/down or deleted from a list. The tasks can also be documented using MS-Office Word or Excel, etc.

## 2. Scenarios

The schedule manager gives you **three options** for scheduling and monitoring:

- a. **Start transaction/program/report online and schedule the jobs (tasks) in the scheduler:** Here, you can create or select a new task list in the schedule, enter these in the ‘daily overview,’ and monitor and control the task’s execution in the ‘monitor.’
- b. **Start transaction/program/report online and schedule the jobs (tasks)/job chain (task chain):** This is similar to (a) above except that you have the option of inserting a ‘**job chain**’ defined in ‘**flow definition**’ into the task list.
- c. **Start transactions/reports online, schedule job or job chain, work-list:** Here, you can also execute and monitor a complete work-list involving several processing steps with all the step sequences. Besides scheduler, monitor, and flow definition, you can use the ‘**work-list monitor**’ for monitoring the processing status.

## 3. Help Functions

Schedule Manager supplements with useful functions such as:

- Run-time analysis
- Working with variables

- Releasing jobs
- Since each of the **transaction keys** is associated with the relevant **GL accounts**, through the value string, the movement type now identifies the relevant GL Account, and the transaction is posted.

## SAP Tables

### Financial Accounting (FI)



[Open table as spreadsheet](#)

Sl. No.	Are you looking for:	Table
1	Account Assignment Templates for GL Account items	KOMU
2	Account Master (Chart of Accounts)	SKA1
3	Accounting Correspondence Requests	BKORM
4	Accounting Data—A/R and A/P Information System	RFRR
5	Accounting Document Header	BKPF
6	Accounting Document Header (docs from External Systems)	EBKP
7	Accounting Document Header	BKPF
8	Accounting Document Segment	BSEG
9	Accounting secondary index for customers	BSID
10	Accounting secondary index for customers—cleared items	BSAD
11	Accounting—Secondary Index for GL Accounts	BSIS
12	Accounting—Secondary Index for GL Accounts—cleared items	BSAS
13	Accounting secondary index for vendors	BSIK
14	Accounting secondary index for vendors—cleared items	BSAK
15	Accounts Blocked by Dunning Selection	MAHN
16	Asset Accounting—Basic Functions	FI-A
17	Asset Class: Depreciation Area	ANKB

<b>Sl. No.</b>	<b>Are you looking for:</b>	<b>Table</b>
18	Asset classes—Description	ANKT
19	Asset Classes—Field Cont Dependent on Chart	ANKP
20	Asset Classes—General Data	ANKA
21	Asset Classes—Insurance Types	ANKV
22	Asset down payment settlement	ANEV
23	Asset Line Items	ANEP
24	Asset Master Record Segment	ANLA
25	Asset Master Record Segment	ANLX
26	Asset Master Record User Fields	ANLU
27	Asset Periodic Values	ANLP
28	Asset Texts	ANLT
29	Asset Type Text	ANAT
30	Asset Types	ANAR
31	Asset Value Fields	ANLC
32	Bank Master Record	BNKA
33	Business Partner Master (General Data)	BP000
34	Cash Management Line Items in Payment Requests	FDZA
35	Create GL account with reference	TSAK
36	Credit Management—FI Status data	KNKK
37	Customer/Vendor Linking	KLPA
38	Customer master—general data	KNA1
39	Customer master—partner functions	KNVP
40	Customer master—sales data	KNVV

<b>Sl. No.</b>	<b>Are you looking for:</b>	<b>Table</b>
41	Customer master—sales request form	KNVD
42	Customer Master (Company Code)	KNB1
43	Customer Master Bank Details	KNBK
44	Customer Master Credit Management—Central Data	KNKA
45	Customer Master Credit Management—Control Area Data	KNKK
46	Customer Master Dunning Data	KNB5
47	Customer Master Special GL Transactions Figures	KNC3
48	Customer Master Transaction Figures	KNC1
49	Customer Payment History	KNB4
50	Depreciation Terms	ANLB
51	Document Header Asset Posting	ANEK
52	Document Header for Document Parking	VBKP
53	Document Header Supplement for Recurring Entry	BKDF
54	Document Type Texts	T003T
55	Dunning Data (Account Entries)	MHNK
56	Electronic Bank Statement Line Items	FEBEP
57	Financial Accounting ‘Basis’	FBAS
58	GL Account Master (Chart of Accounts—Description)	SKAT
59	GL Account Master (Chart of Accounts—Key Word list)	SKAS
60	GL Account Master (Chart of Accounts)	SKA1
61	GL Account Master (Company Code)	SKB1
62	General Ledger Accounting—Basic	FI-G
63	General Ledger Accounting—Basic	FI-G



<b>Sl. No.</b>	<b>Are you looking for:</b>	<b>Table</b>
64	Global Settings for Payment Program for Payment Requests	F111
65	Index for Vendor Validation of Double Documents	BSIP
66	Insurable Values (Year Dependent)	ANLW
67	Inter Company Posting Procedure	BVOR
68	Main Asset Number	ANLH
69	Management Records for the Dunning Program	MAHNV
70	Name of Transaction Type	AT10T
71	One-Time Account Data Document Segment	BSEC
72	Payment Medium File	PAYR
73	Payment Requests	PAYR
74	Pre-numbered Check	PCEC
75	Pricing Communication Header	KOMK
76	Run Date of a Program	FRUN
77	Secondary Index, Documents for Material	BSIM
78	Settings for GL Posting Reports	FIGL
79	Substitutions	GB92
80	Tax Code Names	T007S
81	TemSe—Administration Data	REGUT
82	Time Dependent Asset Allocations	ANLZ
83	Transaction Activity Category—Description	AT02T
84	Transaction Code for Menu TIMN	AT02A
85	Transaction type	AT10
86	Validation/Substitution User	GB03

Sl. No.	Are you looking for:	Table
87	Validation	GB93
88	Vendor Master (Company Code Section)	LFB1
89	Vendor Master (General Section)	LFA1
90	Vendor Master Bank Details	LFBK
91	Vendor Master—Dunning Data	LFB5
92	Vendor Master Dunning Data	LFB5
93	Vendor Master Record—Purchasing Data	LFM2
94	Vendor Master Record—Purchasing Organization Data	LFM1
95	Vendor Master Transaction Figures	LFC1

## Controlling (CO)



Open table as spreadsheet

Sl. No.	Are you looking for:	Table
1	Activity Type Master	CSLA
2	Actual Line Items for Reconciliation	COFIS
3	Assignment of Work Center to Cost Center	CRCO
4	Basic Settings for Versions	TKA09
5	Characteristic Values	AUSP
6	CO Object: Control Data for Activity Type	COKL
7	CO Object: Control Data for Cost Center	COKA
8	CO Object: Control Data for Primary Cost Element	COKP
9	CO Object: Control Data for Secondary Cost Element	COKS
10	CO Object: Control Data for Statistical Key Figure	COKR

<b>Sl. No.</b>	<b>Are you looking for:</b>	<b>Table</b>
11	CO Object: Document Header	COBK
12	CO Object: Line Items (by Fiscal)	COEJ
13	CO Object: Line Items (by Period)	COEP
14	CO Object: Line Items for Activity Types	COEPL
15	CO Object: Line Items for Activity Type	COEJL
16	CO Object: Line Items for Prices	COEJT
17	CO Object: Line Items for Prices	COEPT
18	CO Object: Line Items for SKF	COEJR
19	CO Objects: Assignment	COSC
20	CO Period Locks	KAPS
21	CO Versions	TKVS
22	Controlling Areas	TKA01
23	Cost Center/Activity Type	CSSL
24	Cost Center/Cost Element	CSSK
25	Cost Center Master Data	CSKS
26	Cost Center Texts	CSKT
27	Cost elements—data dependent on chart of accounts	CSKA
28	Cost elements—data dependent on controlling area	CSKB
29	Cost elements texts	CSKU
30	Dependent on Material and Receiver	A141
31	Dependent on Material Group	A143
32	Dependent on Material	A142
33	Distribution Rules Settlement Rule Order Settlement	COBRB

<b>Sl. No.</b>	<b>Are you looking for:</b>	<b>Table</b>
34	Document Header Controlling Object	BPBK
35	Document Header for Settlement	AUAK
36	Document Segment: Transactions	AUAV
37	EC-PCA: Actual Line Items	GLPCA
38	EC-PCA: Object Table for Account Assignment Elements	GLPCO
39	EC-PCA: Plan Line Items	GLPCP
40	EC-PCA: Transaction Attributes	GLPCC
41	Line Item Annual Values Controlling Object	BPEJ
42	Line Item Period Values Controlling Object	BPEP
43	Line Item Total Values Controlling Object	BPEG
44	Object -Control Data for Cost Elements	COKA
45	Object—Cost Totals for External Postings	COSP
46	Object—Cost Totals for Internal Postings	COSS
47	Object Table for Reconciliation L	COFI01
48	Order Master Data	AUFK
49	PCA- Totals Table	GLPCT
50	Price per Company Code	A138
51	Price per Controlling Area	A136
52	Price per Cost Center	A132
53	Price per Country /Region	A137
54	Price per Profit Center	A139
55	Profit Center Master Data Table	CEPC
56	Profit Center Master Data Table	CEPC

Sl. No.	Are you looking for:	Table
57	Profit Center Master Data	CEPCT
58	Settlement Document: Distribution	AUAB
59	Settlement Document: Receiver Segment	AUAA
60	Settlement Rule for Order Settlement	COBRA
61	Settlement Rules per Depreciation	AUAI
62	Single Plan Items for Reconciliation	COFIP
63	Totals Record—Reconciliation Ledger	COFIT
64	Totals Record for Annual Total Controlling Object	BPJA

## Sales & Distribution (SD)



[Open table as spreadsheet](#)

Sl. No.	Are you looking for:	Table
1	Billing Document Header	VBRK
2	Billing Document Item	VBRP
3	Condition for items	KNOP
4	Condition for transaction data	KNOV
5	Customer Master—Co. Code Data (payment method, recon. acct)	KNB1
6	Customer Master—Dunning info	KNB5
7	Customer Master Bank Data	KNBK
8	Customer Master Credit Control Area Data (credit limits)	KNKK
9	Customer Master Credit Mgmt.	KNKA
10	Customer Master Ship Data	KNVS
11	Customer Master Tax Indicator	KNVI

<b>Sl. No.</b>	<b>Are you looking for:</b>	<b>Table</b>
12	Customer Payment History	KNB4
13	Customer/Vendor Link	KLPA
14	Customers, General Data	KNA1
15	Delivery document—header data	VBAK
16	Delivery document—item data	VBAP
17	Delivery Document Header data	LIKP
18	Delivery due index	VEPVG
19	Delivery header data	LIKP
20	Delivery item data	LIPS
21	Document Flow	VBFA
22	Handling unit—Header table	VEKP
23	Header Status and Administrative Data	VBUK
24	Item Status	VBUP
25	Output type	KNVD
26	Packing—handling unit item (contents)	VEPO
27	Partner Function key	KNVP
28	Partners	VBPA
29	Sales Area Data (terms, order probability)	KNVV
30	Sales document—business data	VBKD
31	Sales document—header data	VBAK
32	Sales document—header status and administrative data	VBUK
33	Sales document—item data	VBAP
34	Sales document—item status	VBUP

Sl. No.	Are you looking for:	Table
35	Sales document—partner	VBPA
36	Sales document—release order data	VBLB
37	Sales document—schedule line data	VBEP
38	Sales document flow	VBFA
39	Sales Document Schedule Line	VBEP
40	Sales Requirements: Individual Records	VBBE
41	Schedule line history	VBEH
42	SD document—delivery note header	VBLK
43	Shipping Unit Header	VEPO
44	Shipping Unit Item (Content)	VEKP

## Materials Management (MM)



[Open table as spreadsheet](#)


Sl. No.	Are you looking for:	Table
1	Account Assignment in Purchasing Document	EKKN
2	Document Header—Reservation	RKPF
3	Document Segment—Material	MSEC
4	General Material Data	MARA
5	Header—Material Document	MKPF
6	Header—Physical Inventory Document	IKPF
7	Help Texts for Movement Types	T157H
8	History per Purchasing Document	EKBE
9	Lists what views have not been created	MOFF

<b>Sl. No.</b>	<b>Are you looking for:</b>	<b>Table</b>
10	Material Groups	T023
11	Material Consumption	MVER
12	Material Descriptions	MAKT
13	Material to BOM Link	MAST
14	Material Valuation	MBEW
15	Movement Type	T156
16	Number range intervals	NRIV
17	Physical Inventory Document Items	ISEG
18	Plant Data for Material	MARC
19	Plant/Material	A501
20	Purchase Requisition Account Assignment	EBKN
21	Purchase Requisition	EBAN
22	Purchasing Document Header	EKKO
23	Purchasing Document Item	EKPO
24	Purchasing Groups	T024
25	Purchasing Info Record—General Data	EINA
26	Purchasing Info Record—Purchasing Organization Data	EINE
27	Release Documentation	EKAB
28	Reservation/dependent requirements	RESB
29	Sales Data for materials	MVKE
30	Scheduling Agreement Schedule Lines	EKET
31	Storage Location Data for Material	MARD
32	Texts for Purchasing Document Types	T161T



Sl. No.	Are you looking for:	Table
33	Texts for Purchasing Document Types	T161T
34	Vendor Master (Company Code)	LFB1
35	Vendor Master (General section)	LFA1

## Production Planning (PP)

 [Open table as spreadsheet](#)

Sl. No.	Are you looking for:	Table
1	BOM Explosion Structure	STPF
2	BOM Group to Material	MAST
3	BOM Header Details	STKO
4	BOM History Records	STZU
5	BOM Item Details	STPO
6	BOM Item Selection	STAS
7	BOM Sub Items (designators)	STPU
8	Capacity Header	KAKO
9	CAPP Sub-operations	PLPH
10	Characteristic Allocation to Class	KSML
11	Characteristic Detail	CABN
12	Characteristic Value Texts	CAWNT
13	Characteristic Values	AUSP
14	Characteristic Values	CAWN
15	Class Detail	KLAH
16	Component Allocation	PLMZ

<b>Sl. No.</b>	<b>Are you looking for:</b>	<b>Table</b>
17	Confirmation Pool	AFRV
18	Confirmations—Defaults for Collective Confirmation	AFRD
19	Confirmations—Goods Movements with Errors	AFFW
20	Confirmations—Header Info for Confirmation Pool	AFRH
21	Confirmations—Incorrect Cost Calculations	AFRC
22	Confirmations—Subsequently Posted Goods Movements	AFWI
23	Customer and Priority	AENR
24	Hierarchy Header	CRHH
25	Hierarchy Structure	CRHS
26	Independent Requirements by Material	PBIM
27	Independent Requirements Data	PBED
28	Inspection Characteristics	PLMK
29	Intervals of Capacity	KAZY
30	LIS—Material Use	S026
31	LIS—Reporting Point Statistics	S028
32	LIS—Run Schedule Quantities	S025
33	LIS—Stock/Requirements Analysis	S094
34	Maintenance Package Allocation	PLWP
35	Material Allocation to Class	KSSK
36	MRP Document Header Data	MDKP
37	MRP Firming Dates	MDFD
38	MRP Table Structure (no data)	MDTB
39	Order Batch Print Requests	AFBP